## RISC-V Debug Specification Version 1.0-STABLE c4f872bb72ba40ad8529e479b3668159f8950f1b

### Editors:

Tue Nov 29 12:27:13 2022 -0800

## **Preface**

This stable specification might change before being accepted as standard. We're trying to only make backwards-compatible changes, but sometimes it's unavoidable to change a corner case. If you implement this document, please keep an eye on the github repository for changes that might affect your implementation.

Contributors to all versions of the spec in alphabetical order (please contact editors to suggest corrections): Bruce Ableidinger, Krste Asanović, Peter Ashenden, Allen Baum, Mark Beal, Alex Bradbury, Chuanhua Chang, Zhong-Ho Chen, Monte Dalrymple, Paul Donahue, Vyacheslav Dyachenko, Ernie Edgar, Peter Egold, Marc Gauthier, Markus Goehrle, Robert Golla, John Hauser, Richard Herveille, Yung-ching Hsiao, Po-wei Huang, Scott Johnson, L. J. Madar, Grigorios Magklis, Jan Matyas, Kai Meinhard, Jean-Luc Nagel, Aram Nahidipour, Rishiyur Nikhil, Gajinder Panesar, Deepak Panwar, Antony Pavlov, Klaus Kruse Pedersen, Ken Pettit, Darius Rad, Joe Rahmeh, Gavin Stark, Ben Staveley, Wesley Terpstra, Megan Wachs, Jan-Willem van de Waerdt, Philipp Wagner, Stefan Wallentowitz, Ray Van De Walker, Andrew Waterman, Thomas Wicki, Andy Wright, and Bryan Wyatt.

## Contents

| Pı | refac | e      |  | i  |
|----|-------|--------|--|----|
| 1  | Intr  | oducti | ion  | 1  |
|    | 1.1   | Termi  | nology   | 1  |
|    | 1.2   | Conte  | xt   | 3  |
|    |       | 1.2.1  | Versions                                       | 3  |
|    |       |        | 1.2.1.1 Bugfixes from 0.13 to 1.0              | 3  |
|    |       |        | 1.2.1.2 Incompatible Changes from 0.13 to 1.0  | 3  |
|    |       |        | 1.2.1.3 Minor Changes from 0.13 to 1.0         | 3  |
|    |       |        | 1.2.1.4 New Features from 0.13 to 1.0          | 4  |
|    |       |        | 1.2.1.5 Incompatible Changes During 1.0 Stable | 5  |
|    | 1.3   | About  | This Document                                  | 5  |
|    |       | 1.3.1  | Structure                                      | 5  |
|    |       | 1.3.2  | ISA vs. non-ISA                                | 5  |
|    |       | 1.3.3  | Register Definition Format                     | 5  |
|    |       |        | 1.3.3.1 Long Name (shortname, at 0x123)        | 6  |
|    | 1.4   | Backg  | round  | 6  |
|    | 1.5   | Suppo  | orted Features                                 | 7  |
| 2  | Sys   | tem O  | verview  | 9  |
| 3  | Deb   | oug Mo | odule (DM), non-ISA                            | 11 |

| RISC-V Debu | g Sp | ecification | Version | 1.0 | -STABLE |
|-------------|------|-------------|---------|-----|---------|
|-------------|------|-------------|---------|-----|---------|

| ISC-V | Debug Specification Version 1.0-STABLE                   | iii |
|-------|--|-----|
| 3.1   | Debug Module Interface (DMI)                             | 12  |
| 3.2   | Reset Control  | 12  |
| 3.3   | Selecting Harts  | 13  |
|       | 3.3.1 Selecting a Single Hart                            | 13  |
|       | 3.3.2 Selecting Multiple Harts                           | 13  |
| 3.4   | Hart DM States   | 14  |
| 3.5   | Run Control  | 14  |
| 3.6   | Halt Groups, Resume Groups, and External Triggers        | 15  |
| 3.7   | Message Registers  | 16  |
| 3.8   | Abstract Commands  | 16  |
|       | 3.8.1 Abstract Command Listing                           | 18  |
|       | 3.8.1.1 Access Register                                  | 18  |
|       | 3.8.1.2 Quick Access                                     | 20  |
|       | 3.8.1.3 Access Memory                                    | 20  |
| 3.9   | Program Buffer   | 22  |
| 3.10  | Overview of Hart Debug States                            | 23  |
| 3.11  | System Bus Access  | 23  |
| 3.12  | Minimally Intrusive Debugging                            | 25  |
| 3.13  | Security   | 25  |
| 3.14  | Version Detection  | 26  |
| 3.15  | Debug Module Registers                                   | 26  |
|       | 3.15.1 Debug Module Status (dmstatus, at 0x11)           | 28  |
|       | 3.15.2 Debug Module Control (dmcontrol, at 0x10)         | 30  |
|       | 3.15.3 Hart Info (hartinfo, at 0x12)                     | 34  |
|       | 3.15.4 Hart Array Window Select (hawindowsel, at 0x14)   | 35  |
|       | 3.15.5 Hart Array Window (hawindow, at 0x15)             | 36  |
|       | 3.15.6 Abstract Control and Status (abstractcs, at 0x16) | 36  |

|   |     | 3.15.8 Abstract Command Autoexec (abstractauto, at 0x18)         | 38 |
|---|-----|--|----|
|   |     | 3.15.9 Configuration Structure Pointer 0 (confstrptr0, at 0x19)  | 39 |
|   |     | 3.15.10 Configuration Structure Pointer 1 (confstrptr1, at 0x1a) | 39 |
|   |     | 3.15.11 Configuration Structure Pointer 2 (confstrptr2, at 0x1b) | 39 |
|   |     | 3.15.12 Configuration Structure Pointer 3 (confstrptr3, at 0x1c) | 40 |
|   |     | 3.15.13 Next Debug Module (nextdm, at 0x1d)                      | 40 |
|   |     | 3.15.14 Abstract Data 0 (data0, at 0x04)                         | 40 |
|   |     | 3.15.15 Program Buffer 0 (progbuf0, at 0x20)                     | 40 |
|   |     | 3.15.16 Authentication Data (authdata, at 0x30)                  | 41 |
|   |     | 3.15.17 Debug Module Control and Status 2 (dmcs2, at 0x32)       | 41 |
|   |     | 3.15.18 Halt Summary 0 (haltsum0, at 0x40)                       | 42 |
|   |     | 3.15.19 Halt Summary 1 (haltsum1, at 0x13)                       | 43 |
|   |     | 3.15.20 Halt Summary 2 (haltsum2, at 0x34)                       | 43 |
|   |     | 3.15.21 Halt Summary 3 (haltsum3, at 0x35)                       | 44 |
|   |     | 3.15.22 System Bus Access Control and Status (sbcs, at 0x38)     | 44 |
|   |     | 3.15.23 System Bus Address 31:0 (sbaddress0, at 0x39)            | 46 |
|   |     | 3.15.24 System Bus Address 63:32 (sbaddress1, at 0x3a)           | 46 |
|   |     | 3.15.25 System Bus Address 95:64 (sbaddress2, at 0x3b)           | 47 |
|   |     | 3.15.26 System Bus Address 127:96 (sbaddress3, at 0x37)          | 47 |
|   |     | 3.15.27 System Bus Data 31:0 (sbdata0, at 0x3c)                  | 47 |
|   |     | 3.15.28 System Bus Data 63:32 (sbdata1, at 0x3d)                 | 48 |
|   |     | 3.15.29 System Bus Data 95:64 (sbdata2, at 0x3e)                 | 49 |
|   |     | 3.15.30 System Bus Data 127:96 (sbdata3, at 0x3f)                | 49 |
|   |     | 3.15.31 Custom Features (custom, at 0x1f)                        | 49 |
|   |     | 3.15.32 Custom Features 0 (custom0, at 0x70)                     | 49 |
|   |     |  |    |
| L |     |  | 50 |
|   | 4.1 | Debug Mode   | 50 |

|   | 4.2   | Load-Reserved/Store-Conditional Instructions                             | 51 |
|---|-------|--|----|
|   | 4.3   | Wait for Interrupt Instruction   | 51 |
|   | 4.4   | Single Step  | 51 |
|   |       | 4.4.1 Step Bit In Dcsr   | 51 |
|   |       | 4.4.2 Icount Trigger   | 52 |
|   | 4.5   | Reset  | 52 |
|   | 4.6   | Resume   | 53 |
|   | 4.7   | XLEN   | 53 |
|   | 4.8   | Core Debug Registers   | 53 |
|   |       | 4.8.1 Debug Control and Status (dcsr, at 0x7b0)                          | 53 |
|   |       | 4.8.2 Debug PC (dpc, at 0x7b1)   | 57 |
|   |       | 4.8.3 Debug Scratch Register 0 (dscratch0, at 0x7b2)                     | 58 |
|   |       | 4.8.4 Debug Scratch Register 1 (dscratch1, at 0x7b3)                     | 58 |
|   | 4.9   | Virtual Debug Registers  | 58 |
|   |       | 4.9.1 Privilege Mode (priv, at virtual)                                  | 58 |
| ۳ | C 44. | nin ICA Entonoion  | 60 |
| 5 |       |  |    |
|   | 5.1   | Enumeration  |    |
|   | 5.2   | Actions  |    |
|   | 5.3   | Priority   |    |
|   | 5.4   | Native Triggers  |    |
|   | 5.5   | Trigger Registers  |    |
|   |       | 5.5.1 Trigger Select (tselect, at 0x7a0)                                 |    |
|   |       | 5.5.2 Trigger Data 1 (tdata1, at 0x7a1)                                  |    |
|   |       | 5.5.3 Trigger Data 2 (tdata2, at 0x7a2)                                  | 67 |
|   |       | 5.5.4 Trigger Data 3 (tdata3, at 0x7a3)                                  | 67 |
|   |       | 0.00.1 11.880.1 20.00 0 (0.00.00) 1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1.1. |    |
|   |       | 5.5.5 Trigger Info (tinfo, at 0x7a4)                                     | 68 |

|   |     | 5.5.7            | Hypervisor Context (hcontext, at 0x6a8)          | 69         |
|---|-----|------------------|--|------------|
|   |     | 5.5.8            | Supervisor Context (scontext, at 0x5a8)          | 69         |
|   |     | 5.5.9            | Machine Context (mcontext, at 0x7a8)             | 70         |
|   |     | 5.5.10           | Machine Supervisor Context (mscontext, at 0x7aa) | 70         |
|   |     | 5.5.11           | Match Control (mcontrol, at 0x7a1)               | 70         |
|   |     | 5.5.12           | Match Control Type 6 (mcontrol6, at 0x7a1)       | 77         |
|   |     | 5.5.13           | Instruction Count (icount, at 0x7a1)             | 84         |
|   |     | 5.5.14           | Interrupt Trigger (itrigger, at 0x7a1)           | 85         |
|   |     | 5.5.15           | Exception Trigger (etrigger, at 0x7a1)           | 87         |
|   |     | 5.5.16           | External Trigger (tmexttrigger, at 0x7a1)        | 88         |
|   |     | 5.5.17           | Trigger Extra (RV32) (textra32, at 0x7a3)        | 89         |
|   |     | 5.5.18           | Trigger Extra (RV64) (textra64, at 0x7a3)        | 90         |
| 6 | Deb | oug Tra          | ansport Module (DTM), non-ISA                    | 92         |
|   | 6.1 | JTAG             | Debug Transport Module                           | 92         |
|   |     | 6.1.1            | JTAG Background                                  | 93         |
|   |     | 6.1.2            | JTAG DTM Registers                               | 93         |
|   |     | 6.1.3            | IDCODE (at 0x01)                                 | 93         |
|   |     | 6.1.4            | DTM Control and Status (dtmcs, at 0x10)          | 94         |
|   |     | 6.1.5            | Debug Module Interface Access (dmi, at 0x11)     | 95         |
|   |     | 6.1.6            | BYPASS (at 0x1f)                                 | 96         |
|   |     | 6.1.7            | Recommended JTAG Connector                       | 97         |
| A | Har | $\mathbf{dware}$ | Implementations                                  | 99         |
|   | A.1 | Abstra           | act Command Based                                | 99         |
|   | A.2 | Execut           | tion Based                                       | 99         |
|   | A.3 | Debug            | Module Interface Signals                         | 100        |
| В | Deb | ougger           | Implementation                                   | <b>102</b> |

| RISC-V | <sup>7</sup> Debug | Specification Version 1.0-STABLE     | vii |
|--------|--------------------|--------------------------------------|-----|
| B.1    | C Head             | der File                             | 102 |
| B.2    | Extern             | al Debugger Implementation           | 102 |
|        | B.2.1              | Debug Module Interface Access        | 102 |
|        | B.2.2              | Checking for Halted Harts            | 103 |
|        | B.2.3              | Halting                              | 103 |
|        | B.2.4              | Running                              | 103 |
|        | B.2.5              | Single Step                          | 103 |
|        | B.2.6              | Accessing Registers                  | 103 |
|        |                    | B.2.6.1 Using Abstract Command       | 103 |
|        |                    | B.2.6.2 Using Program Buffer         | 104 |
|        | B.2.7              | Reading Memory                       | 104 |
|        |                    | B.2.7.1 Using System Bus Access      | 104 |
|        |                    | B.2.7.2 Using Program Buffer         | 105 |
|        |                    | B.2.7.3 Using Abstract Memory Access | 106 |
|        | B.2.8              | Writing Memory                       | 107 |
|        |                    | B.2.8.1 Using System Bus Access      | 107 |
|        |                    | B.2.8.2 Using Program Buffer         | 107 |
|        |                    | B.2.8.3 Using Abstract Memory Access | 108 |
|        | B.2.9              | Triggers                             | 109 |
|        | B.2.10             | Handling Exceptions                  | 110 |
|        | B.2.11             | Quick Access                         | 110 |

 $\mathbf{Index}$ 

C Change Log

112

115

# List of Figures

| 2.1 | RISC-V Debug System Overview   |  | • | • | • |  | • | • |  | • | • | • | • |   |  |  |  | 10 |
|-----|--------------------------------|--|---|---|---|--|---|---|--|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|--|----|
| 3.1 | Run/Halt Debug State Machine . |  |   |   |   |  |   |   |  |   |   |   |   | _ |  |  |  | 24 |

# List of Tables

| 1.2  | Register Access Abbreviations                                      | 6  |
|------|--|----|
| 3.1  | Use of Data Registers  | 17 |
| 3.2  | Meaning of cmdtype   | 18 |
| 3.3  | Abstract Register Numbers  | 19 |
| 3.7  | System Bus Data Bits   | 23 |
| 3.8  | Debug Module Debug Bus Registers                                   | 26 |
| 3.8  | Debug Module Debug Bus Registers                                   | 27 |
| 3.8  | Debug Module Debug Bus Registers                                   | 28 |
| 4.1  | Core Debug Registers   | 53 |
| 4.2  | Priority of reasons for entering Debug Mode from highest to lowest | 54 |
| 4.4  | Virtual address in DPC upon Debug Mode Entry                       | 57 |
| 4.5  | Virtual Core Debug Registers                                       | 58 |
| 4.6  | Privilege Mode and Virtualization Mode Encoding                    | 59 |
| 5.1  | action encoding  | 61 |
| 5.2  | Synchronous exception priority in decreasing priority order        | 62 |
| 5.3  | Trigger Registers  | 64 |
| 5.3  | Trigger Registers  | 65 |
| 5.10 | Suggested Trigger Timings  | 77 |
| 6.1  | JTAG DTM TAP Registers   | 93 |

|     | RISC-V Debug Specification Version 1.0-STABLE            |
|-----|--|
| 6.5 | MIPI-10 Connector Diagram                                |
| 6.6 | MIPI-20 Connector Diagram                                |
| 6.7 | JTAG Connector Pinout                                    |
| A.1 | Signals for the suggested DMI between one DTM and one DM |

Х

## Chapter 1

## Introduction

When a design progresses from simulation to hardware implementation, a user's control and understanding of the system's current state drops dramatically. To help bring up and debug low level software and hardware, it is critical to have good debugging support built into the hardware. When a robust OS is running on a core, software can handle many debugging tasks. However, in many scenarios, hardware support is essential.

This document outlines a standard architecture for debug support on RISC-V hardware platforms. This architecture allows a variety of implementations and tradeoffs, which is complementary to the wide range of RISC-V implementations. At the same time, this specification defines common interfaces to allow debugging tools and components to target a variety of hardware platforms based on the RISC-V ISA.

System designers may choose to add additional hardware debug support, but this specification defines a standard interface for common functionality.

## 1.1 Terminology

#### **AMO**

Atomic Memory Operation.

#### **BYPASS**

JTAG instruction that selects a single bit data register, also called BYPASS.

#### component

A RISC-V core, or other part of a hardware platform. Typically all components will be connected to a single system bus.

#### CSR

Control and Status Register.

**DM** Debug Module (see Chapter 3).

#### $\mathbf{DMI}$

Debug Module Interface (see Section 3.1).

#### **DR** JTAG Data Register.

#### DTM

Debug Transport Module (see Section 6).

#### **DXLEN**

Debug XLEN, which is the widest XLEN a hart supports, ignoring the current value of MXL in misa.

#### GPR.

General Purpose Register.

#### hardware platform

A single system consisting of one or more *components*.

#### hart

A hardware thread in a RISC-V core.

#### **IDCODE**

32-bit Identification CODE, and a JTAG instruction that returns the IDCODE value.

#### IR JTAG Instruction Register.

#### **JTAG**

Refers to work done by IEEE's Joint Test Action Group, described in IEEE 1149.1.

#### Minimal RISC-V Debug Specification

A subset of the full Debug Specification that allows for very small implementations. See Chapter 3.

MR Message Register, described in Section 3.7.

#### **NAPOT**

Naturally Aligned Power-Of-Two.

#### NMI

Non-Maskable Interrupt.

#### physical address

An address that is directly usable on the system bus.

#### SBA

System Bus Access (see Section 3.11).

#### TAP

Test Access Port, defined in IEEE 1149.1.

TM Trigger Module (see Section 5).

#### virtual address

An address as a hart sees it. If the hart is using address translation this may be different from the physical address. If there is no translation then it will be the same.

#### херс

The exception program counter CSR (e.g. mepc) that is appropriate for the mode being trapped to.

#### 1.2 Context

This document is written to work with all RISC-V ISA extensions ratified through 2021.

#### 1.2.1 Versions

Version 0.13 of this document was ratified by the RISC-V Foundation's board. Versions 0.13.x are bug fix releases to that ratified specification.

Version 0.14 was a working version that was never officially ratified.

Version 1.0 is almost entirely forwards and backwards compatible with Version 0.13.

#### 1.2.1.1 Bugfixes from 0.13 to 1.0

Changes that fix a bug in the spec:

- 1. Fix order of operations described in sbdata0. #392
- 2. Resume ack is set after resume, in Section 3.5. #400
- 3. sselect applies to svalue. #402
- 4. mte only applies when action=0. #411
- 5. aamsize does not affect Argument Width. #420
- 6. Clarify that harts halt out of reset if haltreq =1. #419

#### 1.2.1.2 Incompatible Changes from 0.13 to 1.0

Changes that are not backwards-compatible. Debuggers or hardware implementations that implement 0.13 will have to change something in order to implement 1.0:

- 1. Make haltsum0 optional if there is only one hart. #505
- 2. System bus autoincrement only happens if an access actually takes place. (sbdata0) #507
- 3. Bump version to 3. #512
- 4. Require debugger to poll dmactive after lowering it. #566
- 5. Add pending to icount. #574
- 6. When a selected trigger is disabled, tdata2 and tdata3 can be written with any value supported by any of the types this trigger supports. #721
- 7. tcontrol fields only apply to breakpoint traps, not any trap. #723

#### 1.2.1.3 Minor Changes from 0.13 to 1.0

Changes that slightly modify defined behavior. Technically backwards incompatible, but unlikely to be noticeable:

- 1. stopcount only applies to hart-local counters. #405
- 2. version may be invalid when dmactive =0. #414
- 3. Address triggers (mcontrol) may fire on any accessed address. #421
- 4. All trigger registers (Section 5.3) are optional. #431
- 5. When extending IR, bypass still is all ones. #437
- 6. ebreaks and ebreaku are WARL. #458
- 7. NMIs are disabled by stepie. #465
- 8. R/W1C fields should be cleared by writing every bit high. #472
- 9. Specify trigger priorities in Table 5.2 relative to exceptions. #478
- 10. Time may pass before dmactive becomes high. #500
- 11. Clear MPRV when resuming into lower privilege mode. #503
- 12. Halt state may not be preserved across reset. #504
- 13. Hardware should clear trigger action when dmode is cleared and action is 1. #501
- 14. Change quick access exceptions to halt the target in Section 3.8.1.2. #585
- 15. Writing 0 to tdata1 forces a state where tdata2 and tdata3 are writable. #598
- 16. Solutions to deal with reentrancy in Section 5.4 prevent triggers from *matching*, not merely *firing*. This primarily affects icount behavior. #722

#### 1.2.1.4 New Features from 0.13 to 1.0

New backwards-compatible feature that did not exist before:

- 1. Add halt groups and external triggers in Section 3.6. #404
- 2. Reserve some DMI space for non-standard use. See custom, and custom0 through custom15. #406
- 3. Reserve trigger type values for non-standard use. #417
- 4. Add nmi bit to itrigger. #408 and #709
- 5. Recommend matching on every accessed address. #449
- 6. Add resume groups in Section 3.6. #506
- 7. Add relaxed priv. #536
- 8. Move scontext, renaming original to mscontext, and create hcontext. #535
- 9. Add mcontrol6, deprecating mcontrol. #538
- 10. Add hypervisor support: ebreakvs, ebreakvu, v, hcontext, mcontrol, mcontrol6, and priv. #549
- 11. Optionally make anyunavail and allunavail sticky, controlled by stickyunavail. #520
- 12. Add tmexttrigger to support trigger module external trigger inputs. #543
- 13. Describe mcontrol and mcontrol6 behavior with atomic instructions. #561
- 14. Trigger hit bits must be set on fire, may be set on match. #593
- 15. Add sbytemask and sbytemask to textra32 and textra64. #588
- 16. Allow debugger to request harts stay alive with keepalive bit in Section 3.15.2. #592
- 17. Add ndmresetpending to allow a debugger to determine when ndmreset is complete. #594
- 18. Add intctl to support triggers from an interrupt controller. #599

#### 1.2.1.5 Incompatible Changes During 1.0 Stable

Backwards-incompatible changes between two versions that are both called 1.0 stable.

- 1. nmi was moved from etrigger to itrigger, and is now subject to the mode bits in that trigger.
- 2. DM data registers are now Message Registers (see Section 3.7). Debuggers must not assume they can read back the same value that they wrote, and must not assume that the result of the last abstract command is available as argument to the next abstract command. #728
- 3. It may not be possible to read the contents of the Program Buffer using the progbuf registers. #731

#### 1.3 About This Document

#### 1.3.1 Structure

This document contains two parts. The main part of the document is the specification, which is given in the numbered chapters. The second part of the document is a set of appendices. The information in the appendices is intended to clarify and provide examples, but is not part of the actual specification.

#### 1.3.2 ISA vs. non-ISA

This specification contains both ISA and non-ISA parts. The ISA parts define self-contained ISA extensions. The other parts of the document describe the non-ISA external debug extension. Chapters whose contents are solely one or the other are labeled as such in their title. Chapters without such a label apply to both ISA and non-ISA.

#### 1.3.3 Register Definition Format

All register definitions in this document follow the format shown below. A simple graphic shows which fields are in the register. The upper and lower bit indices are shown to the top left and top right of each field. The total number of bits in the field are shown below it.

After the graphic follows a table which for each field lists its name, description, allowed accesses, and reset value. The allowed accesses are listed in Table 1.2. The reset value is either a constant or "Preset." The latter means it is an implementation-specific legal value.

Parts of the register which are currently unused are labeled with the number 0. Software must only write 0 to those fields, and ignore their value while reading. Hardware must return 0 when those fields are read, and ignore the value written to them.

version fields.

Names of registers and their fields are hyperlinks to their definition, and are also listed in the index on page 112.

#### 1.3.3.1 Long Name (shortname, at 0x123)



| Field | Description                                 | Access | Reset |
|-------|---|--------|-------|
| field | Description of what this field is used for. | R/W    | 15    |

Table 1.2: Register Access Abbreviations

| R     | Read-only.  |
|-------|---|
| R/W   | Read/Write.   |
| R/W1C | Read/Write Ones to Clear. Writing 0 to every bit has    |
|       | no effect. Writing 1 to every bit clears the field. The |
|       | result of other writes is undefined.                    |
| WARZ  | Write any, read zero. A debugger may write any          |
|       | value. When read this field returns 0.                  |
| W1    | Write-only. Only writing 1 has an effect. When read     |
|       | the returned value should be 0.                         |
| WARL  | Write any, read legal. A debugger may write any         |
|       | value. If a value is unsupported, the implementation    |
|       | converts the value to one that is supported.            |

## 1.4 Background

There are several use cases for dedicated debugging hardware, both internal to a CPU core and with an external connection. This specification addresses the use cases listed below. Implementations can choose not to implement every feature, which means some use cases might not be supported.

- Debugging low-level software in the absence of an OS or other software.
- Debugging issues in the OS itself.
- Bootstrapping a hardware platform to test, configure, and program components before there is any executable code path in the hardware platform.
- Accessing hardware on a hardware platform without a working CPU.

In addition, even without a hardware debugging interface, architectural support in a RISC-V CPU can aid software debugging and performance analysis by allowing hardware triggers and breakpoints.

### 1.5 Supported Features

The debug interface described in this specification supports the following features:

- 1. All hart registers (including CSRs) can be read/written.
- 2. Memory can be accessed either from the hart's point of view, through the system bus directly, or both.
- 3. RV32, RV64, and future RV128 are all supported.
- 4. Any hart in the hardware platform can be independently debugged.
- 5. A debugger can discover almost <sup>1</sup> everything it needs to know itself, without user configuration.
- 6. Each hart can be debugged from the very first instruction executed.
- 7. A RISC-V hart can be halted when a software breakpoint instruction is executed.
- 8. Hardware single-step can execute one instruction at a time.
- 9. Debug functionality is independent of the debug transport used.
- 10. The debugger does not need to know anything about the microarchitecture of the harts it is debugging.
- 11. Arbitrary subsets of harts can be halted and resumed simultaneously. (Optional)
- 12. Arbitrary instructions can be executed on a halted hart. That means no new debug functionality is needed when a core has additional or custom instructions or state, as long as there exist programs that can move that state into GPRs. (Optional)
- 13. Registers can be accessed without halting. (Optional)
- 14. A running hart can be directed to execute a short sequence of instructions, with little overhead. (Optional)
- 15. A system bus master allows memory access without involving any hart. (Optional)
- 16. A RISC-V hart can be halted when a trigger matches the PC, read/write address/data, or an instruction opcode. (Optional)
- 17. Harts can be grouped, and harts in the same group will all halt when any of them halts. These groups can also react to or notify external triggers. (Optional)

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>Notable exceptions include information about the memory map and peripherals.

This document does not suggest a strategy or implementation for hardware test, debugging or error detection techniques. Scan, built-in self test (BIST), etc. are out of scope of this specification, but this specification does not intend to limit their use in RISC-V systems.

It is possible to debug code that uses software threads, but there is no special debug support for it.

## Chapter 2

## System Overview

Figure 2.1 shows the main components of Debug Support. Blocks shown in dotted lines are optional.

The user interacts with the Debug Host (e.g. laptop), which is running a debugger (e.g. gdb). The debugger communicates with a Debug Translator (e.g. OpenOCD, which may include a hardware driver) to communicate with Debug Transport Hardware (e.g. Olimex USB-JTAG adapter). The Debug Transport Hardware connects the Debug Host to the hardware platform's Debug Transport Module (DTM). The DTM provides access to one or more Debug Modules (DMs) using the Debug Module Interface (DMI).

Each hart in the hardware platform is controlled by exactly one DM. Harts may be heterogeneous. There is no further limit on the hart-DM mapping, but usually all harts in a single core are controlled by the same DM. In most hardware platforms there will only be one DM that controls all the harts in the hardware platform.

DMs provide run control of their harts in the hardware platform. Abstract commands provide access to GPRs. Additional registers are accessible through abstract commands or by writing programs to the optional Program Buffer.

The Program Buffer allows the debugger to execute arbitrary instructions on a hart. This mechanism can also be used to access memory. An optional system bus access block allows memory accesses without using a RISC-V hart to perform the access.

Each RISC-V hart may implement a Trigger Module. When trigger conditions are met, harts will halt and inform the debug module that they have halted.

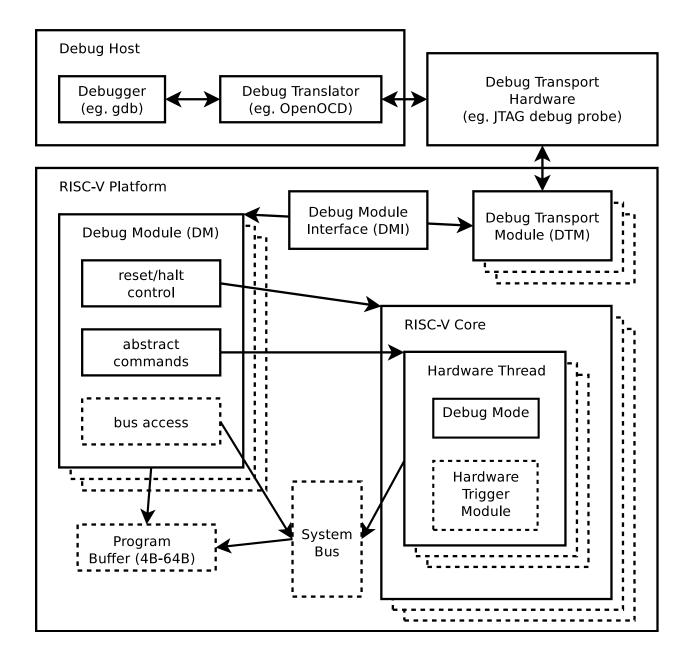


Figure 2.1: RISC-V Debug System Overview

## Chapter 3

## Debug Module (DM), non-ISA

The Debug Module implements a translation interface between abstract debug operations and their specific implementation. It might support the following operations:

- 1. Give the debugger necessary information about the implementation. (Required)
- 2. Allow any individual hart to be halted and resumed. (Required)
- 3. Provide status on which harts are halted. (Required)
- 4. Provide abstract read and write access to a halted hart's GPRs. (Required)
- 5. Provide access to a reset signal that allows debugging from the very first instruction after reset. (Required)
- 6. Provide a mechanism to allow debugging harts immediately out of reset (regardless of the reset cause). (Optional)
- 7. Provide abstract access to non-GPR hart registers. (Optional)
- 8. Provide a Program Buffer to force the hart to execute arbitrary instructions. (Optional)
- 9. Allow multiple harts to be halted, resumed, and/or reset at the same time. (Optional)
- 10. Allow memory access from a hart's point of view. (Optional)
- 11. Allow direct System Bus Access. (Optional)
- 12. Group harts. When any hart in the group halts, they all halt. (Optional)
- 13. Respond to external triggers by halting each hart in a configured group. (Optional)
- 14. Signal an external trigger when a hart in a group halts. (Optional)

In order to be compatible with this specification an implementation must:

- 1. Implement all the required features listed above.
- 2. Implement at least one of Program Buffer, System Bus Access, or Abstract Access Memory command mechanisms.
- 3. Do at least one of:
  - (a) Implement the Program Buffer.
  - (b) Implement abstract access to all registers that are visible to software running on the hart including all the registers that are present on the hart and listed in Table 3.3.
  - (c) Implement abstract access to at least all GPRs, dcsr, and dpc, and advertise the implementation as conforming to the "Minimal RISC-V Debug Specification 1.0-STABLE",

instead of the "RISC-V Debug Specification 1.0-STABLE".

A single DM can debug up to  $2^{20}$  harts.

### 3.1 Debug Module Interface (DMI)

Debug Modules are slaves to a bus called the Debug Module Interface (DMI). The master of the bus is the Debug Transport Module(s). The Debug Module Interface can be a trivial bus with one master and one slave (see A.3), or use a more full-featured bus like TileLink or the AMBA Advanced Peripheral Bus. The details are left to the system designer.

The DMI uses between 7 and 32 address bits. It supports read and write operations. The bottom of the address space is used for the first (and usually only) DM. Extra space can be used for custom debug devices, other cores, additional DMs, etc. If there are additional DMs on this DMI, the base address of the next DM in the DMI address space is given in nextdm.

The Debug Module is controlled via register accesses to its DMI address space.

#### 3.2 Reset Control

There are two methods that allow a debugger to reset harts. ndmreset resets all the harts in the hardware platform, as well as all other parts of the hardware platform except for the Debug Modules, Debug Transport Modules, and Debug Module Interface. Exactly what is affected by this reset is implementation dependent, but it must be possible to debug programs from the first instruction executed. hartreset resets all the currently selected harts. In this case an implementation may reset more harts than just the ones that are selected. The debugger can discover which other harts are reset (if any) by selecting them and checking anyhavereset and allhavereset.

To perform either of these resets, the debugger first asserts the bit, and then clears it. The actual reset may start as soon as the bit is asserted, but may start an arbitrarily long time after the bit is deasserted. The reset itself may also take an arbitrarily long time. While the reset is on-going, harts are either in the running state, indicating it's possible to perform some abstract commands during this time, or in the unavailable state, indicating it's not possible to perform any abstract commands during this time. Once a hart's reset is complete, havereset becomes set. When a hart comes out of reset and haltred or resethaltred are set, the hart will immediately enter Debug Mode (halted state). Otherwise, if the hart was initially running it will execute normally (running state) and if the hart was initially halted it should now be running but may be halted.

There is no general, reliable way for the debugger to know when reset has actually begun.

The Debug Module's own state and registers should only be reset at power-up and while dmactive in dmcontrol is 0. If there is another mechanism to reset the DM, this mechanism must also reset all the harts accessible to the DM.

Due to clock and power domain crossing issues, it might not be possible to perform arbitrary DMI accesses across hardware platform reset. While ndmreset or any external reset is asserted, the only

supported DM operations are reading and writing dmcontrol. The behavior of other accesses is undefined.

When harts have been reset, they must set a sticky havereset state bit. The conceptual havereset state bits can be read for selected harts in anyhavereset and allhavereset in dmstatus. These bits must be set regardless of the cause of the reset. The havereset bits for the selected harts can be cleared by writing 1 to ackhavereset in dmcontrol. The havereset bits might or might not be cleared when dmactive is low.

### 3.3 Selecting Harts

Up to  $2^{20}$  harts can be connected to a single DM. Commands issued to the DM only apply to the currently selected harts.

To enumerate all the harts, a debugger must first determine HARTSELLEN by writing all ones to hartsel (assuming the maximum size) and reading back the value to see which bits were actually set. Then it selects each hart starting from 0 until either anynonexistent in dmstatus is 1, or the highest index (depending on HARTSELLEN) is reached.

The debugger can discover the mapping between hart indices and mhartid by using the interface to read mhartid, or by reading the hardware platform's configuration structure.

#### 3.3.1 Selecting a Single Hart

All debug modules must support selecting a single hart. The debugger can select a hart by writing its index to hartsel. Hart indexes start at 0 and are contiguous until the final index.

#### 3.3.2 Selecting Multiple Harts

Debug Modules may implement a Hart Array Mask register to allow selecting multiple harts at once. The nth bit in the Hart Array Mask register applies to the hart with index n. If the bit is 1 then the hart is selected. Usually a DM will have a Hart Array Mask register exactly wide enough to select all the harts it supports, but it's allowed to tie any of these bits to 0.

The debugger can set bits in the hart array mask register using hawindowsel and hawindow, then apply actions to all selected harts by setting hasel. If this feature is supported, multiple harts can be halted, resumed, and reset simultaneously. The state of the hart array mask register is not affected by setting or clearing hasel.

Execution of Abstract Commands ignores this mechanism and only applies to the hart selected by hartsel.

#### 3.4 Hart DM States

Every hart that can be selected is in exactly one of the following four DM states: non-existent, unavailable, running, or halted. Which state the selected harts are in is reflected by allnonexistent, anynonexistent, allunavail, anyunavail, allrunning, anyrunning, allhalted, and anyhalted.

Harts are nonexistent if they will never be part of this hardware platform, no matter how long a user waits. E.g. in a simple single-hart hardware platform only one hart exists, and all others are nonexistent. Debuggers may assume that a hardware platform has no harts with indexes higher than the first nonexistent one.

Harts are unavailable if they might exist/become available at a later time, or if there are other harts with higher indexes than this one. Harts may be unavailable for a variety of reasons including being reset, temporarily powered down, and not being plugged into the hardware platform. That means harts might become available or unavailable at any time, although these events should be rare in hardware platforms built to be easily debugged. There are no guarantees about the state of the hart when it becomes available.

Hardware platforms with very large number of harts may permanently disable some during manufacturing, leaving holes in the otherwise continuous hart index space. In order to let the debugger discover all harts, they must show up as unavailable even if there is no chance of them ever becoming available.

Harts are running when they are executing normally, as if no debugger was attached. This includes being in a low power mode or waiting for an interrupt, as long as a halt request will result in the hart being halted.

Harts are halted when they are in Debug Mode, only performing tasks on behalf of the debugger.

Which states a hart that is reset goes through is implementation dependent. Harts may be unavailable while reset is asserted, and some time after reset is deasserted. They might transition to running for some time after reset is deasserted. Finally they end up either running or halted, depending on haltreq and resethaltreq.

#### 3.5 Run Control

For every hart, the Debug Module tracks 4 conceptual bits of state: halt request, resume ack, halt-on-reset request, and hart reset. (The hart reset and halt-on-reset request bits are optional.) These 4 bits reset to 0, except for resume ack, which may reset to either 0 or 1. The DM receives halted, running, and havereset signals from each hart. The debugger can observe the state of resume ack in allresumeack and anyresumeack, and the state of halted, running, and havereset signals in allhalted, anyhalted, allrunning, anyrunning, allhavereset, and anyhavereset. The state of the other bits cannot be observed directly.

When a debugger writes 1 to haltreq, each selected hart's halt request bit is set. When a running hart, or a hart just coming out of reset, sees its halt request bit high, it responds by halting, deasserting its running signal, and asserting its halted signal. Halted harts ignore their halt request

bit.

When a debugger writes 1 to resumereq, each selected hart's resume ack bit is cleared and each selected, halted hart is sent a resume request. Harts respond by resuming, clearing their halted signal, and asserting their running signal. At the end of this process the resume ack bit is set. These status signals of all selected harts are reflected in allresumeack, anyresumeack, allrunning, and anyrunning. Resume requests are ignored by running harts.

When halt or resume is requested, a hart must respond in less than one second, unless it is unavailable. (How this is implemented is not further specified. A few clock cycles will be a more typical latency).

The DM can implement optional halt-on-reset bits for each hart, which it indicates by setting hasresethaltreq to 1. This means the DM implements the setresethaltreq and clrresethaltreq bits. Writing 1 to setresethaltreq sets the halt-on-reset request bit for each selected hart. When a hart's halt-on-reset request bit is set, the hart will immediately enter debug mode on the next deassertion of its reset. This is true regardless of the reset's cause. The hart's halt-on-reset request bit remains set until cleared by the debugger writing 1 to clrresethaltreq while the hart is selected, or by DM reset.

If the DM is reset while a hart is halted, it is UNSPECIFIED whether that hart resumes. Debuggers should use resumered to explicitly resume harts before clearing dmactive and disconnecting.

### 3.6 Halt Groups, Resume Groups, and External Triggers

An optional feature allows a debugger to place harts into two kinds of groups: halt groups and resume groups. It is also possible to add external triggers to a halt and resume groups.

When any hart in a halt group halts, or an external trigger that's a member of the halt group fires:

- 1. That hart halts normally, with cause reflecting the original cause of the halt.
- 2. All the other harts in the halt group that are running will quickly halt. cause for those harts should be set to 6, but may be set to 3. Other harts in the halt group that are halted but have started the process of resuming must also quickly become halted, even if they do resume briefly.
- 3. Any external triggers in that group are notified.

Adding a hart to a halt group does not automatically halt that hart, even if other harts in the group are already halted.

When any hart in a resume group resumes, or an external trigger that's a member of the resume group fires:

1. All the other harts in that group that are halted will quickly resume as soon as any currently executing abstract commands have completed. Each hart in the group sets its resume ack bit as soon as it has resumed. Harts that are in the process of halting should complete that process and stay halted.

2. Any external triggers in that group are notified.

Adding a hart to a resume group does not automatically resume that hart, even if other harts in the group are currently running.

External triggers are abstract concepts that can signal the DM and/or receive signals from the DM. This configuration is done through dmcs2, where external triggers are referred to by a number. Commonly, external triggers are capable of sending a signal from the hardware platform into the DM, as well as receiving a signal from the DM to take their own action on. It is also allowable for an external trigger to be input-only or output-only. By convention external triggers 0–7 are bidirectional, triggers 8–11 are input-only, and triggers 12–15 are output-only but this is not required.

External triggers could be used to implement near simultaneous halting/resuming of all cores in a hardware platform, when not all cores are RISC-V cores.

In both halt and resume groups, group 0 is special. Harts in group 0 halt/resume as if groups aren't implemented at all.

When the DM is reset, all harts must be placed in the lowest-numbered halt and resume groups that they can be in. (This will usually be group 0.)

Some designs may choose to hardcode hart groups to a group other than group 0, meaning it is never possible to halt or resume just a single hart. This is explicitly allowed. In that case it must be possible to discover the groups by using dmcs2 even if it's not possible to change the configuration.

## 3.7 Message Registers

Message Registers (MRs) are registers that are only used in a limited way, allowing for different implementations. They exist to let two sides communicate when the two sides already know who is the sender and who is the receiver.

An MR implements read and write operations on two sides. When one side reads an MR, and the last write was by the other side, then the result value of the read is the value last written by the other side. When one side reads an MR, and the last write was by that same side, then the result value of the read is UNSPECIFIED. Thus the MR can be used to exchange data with the other side, but not as storage to be accessed later.

A regular register can be used to implement an MR. In some FPGAs it is cheaper to trade off storage for muxes, and in that case the storage can be duplicated (one set of bits for sending and one for receiving) to avoid having to implement muxes to read/write data from/to the correct side.

#### 3.8 Abstract Commands

The DM supports a set of abstract commands, most of which are optional. Depending on the implementation, the debugger may be able to perform some abstract commands even when the

selected hart is not halted. Debuggers can only determine which abstract commands are supported by a given hart in a given state (running, halted, or held in reset) by attempting them and then looking at cmderr in abstractcs to see if they were successful. Commands may be supported with some options set, but not with other options set. If a command has unsupported options set or if bits that are defined as 0 aren't 0, then the DM must set cmderr to 2 (not supported).

Example: Every DM must support the Access Register command, but might not support accessing CSRs. If the debugger requests to read a CSR in that case, the command will return "not supported."

Debuggers execute abstract commands by writing them to command. They can determine whether an abstract command is complete by reading busy in abstracts. If the debugger starts a new command while busy is set, cmderr becomes 1 (busy), the currently executing command still gets to run to completion, but any error generated by the currently executing command is lost. After completion, cmderr indicates whether the command was successful or not. Commands may fail because a hart is not halted, not running, unavailable, or because they encounter an error during execution.

If the command takes arguments, the debugger must write them to the data MRs before writing to command. If a command returns results, the Debug Module must ensure they are placed in the data MRs before busy is cleared. Which data MRs are used for the arguments is described in Table 3.1. In all cases the least-significant word is placed in the lowest-numbered data MR. The argument width depends on the command being executed, and is DXLEN where not explicitly specified.

| Table 5.1. Use of Data Registers |                   |              |              |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|--------------|--------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Argument Width                   | arg0/return value | arg1         | arg2         |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 32                               | data0             | data1        | data2        |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 64                               | data0, data1      | data2, data3 | data4, data5 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 128                              | data0-data3       | data4-data7  | data8-data11 |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 3.1: Use of Data Registers

The Abstract Command interface is designed to allow a debugger to write commands as fast as possible, and then later check whether they completed without error. In the common case the debugger will be much slower than the target and commands succeed, which allows for maximum throughput. If there is a failure, the interface ensures that no commands execute after the failing one. To discover which command failed, the debugger has to look at the state of the DM (e.g. contents of data0) or hart (e.g. contents of a register modified by a Program Buffer program) to determine which one failed.

Before starting an abstract command, a debugger must ensure that haltreq, resumereq, and ackhavereset are all 0.

While an abstract command is executing (busy in abstractcs is high), a debugger must not change hartsel, and must not write 1 to haltreq, resumereq, ackhavereset, setresethaltreq, or clrresethaltreq.

If an abstract command does not complete in the expected time and appears to be hung, the debugger can try to reset the hart (using hartreset or ndmreset). If that doesn't clear busy, then it can try resetting the Debug Module (using dmactive).

If an abstract command is started while the selected hart is unavailable or if a hart becomes unavailable while executing an abstract command, then the Debug Module may terminate the

abstract command, setting busy low, and cmderr to 4 (halt/resume). Alternatively, the command could just appear to be hung (busy never goes low).

#### 3.8.1 Abstract Command Listing

This section describes each of the different abstract commands and how their fields should be interpreted when they are written to command.

Each abstract command is a 32-bit value. The top 8 bits contain cmdtype which determines the kind of command. Table 3.2 lists all commands.

| Table 3.2: Meaning of cmatype |                         |      |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------|------|--|--|--|--|--|
| cmdtype                       | Command                 | Page |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0                             | Access Register Command | 18   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1                             | Quick Access            | 20   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2                             | Access Memory Command   | 20   |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 3.2: Meaning of cmdtype

#### 3.8.1.1 Access Register

This command gives the debugger access to CPU registers and allows it to execute the Program Buffer. It performs the following sequence of operations:

- 1. If write is clear and transfer is set, then copy data from the register specified by regno into the argo region of data, and perform any side effects that occur when this register is read from M-mode.
- 2. If write is set and transfer is set, then copy data from the arg0 region of data into the register specified by regno, and perform any side effects that occur when this register is written from M-mode.
- 3. If aarpostincrement and transfer are set, increment regno. regno may also be incremented if aarpostincrement is set and transfer is clear.
- 4. Execute the Program Buffer, if postexec is set.

If any of these operations fail, cmderr is set and none of the remaining steps are executed. An implementation may detect an upcoming failure early, and fail the overall command before it reaches the step that would cause failure. If the failure is that the requested register does not exist in the hart, cmderr must be set to 3 (exception).

Debug Modules must implement this command and must support read and write access to all GPRs when the selected hart is halted. Debug Modules may optionally support accessing other registers, or accessing registers when the hart is running. It is recommended that if one register in a group is accessible, then all registers in that group are accessible, but each individual register (aside from GPRs) may be supported differently across read, write, and halt status.

Registers might not be accessible if they wouldn't be accessible by M mode code currently running. (E.g. fflags might not be accessible when mstatus.FS is 0.) If this is the case, the debugger is

responsible for changing state to make the registers accessible. The Core Debug Registers (Section 4.8) should be accessible if abstract CSR access is implemented.

Table 3.3: Abstract Register Numbers

| Numbers         | Group Description                                      |
|-----------------|--|
| 0x0000 - 0x0fff | CSRs. The "PC" can be accessed here through dpc.       |
| 0x1000 - 0x101f | GPRs   |
| 0x1020 - 0x103f | Floating point registers                               |
| 0xc000 - 0xffff | Reserved for non-standard extensions and internal use. |

The encoding of aarsize was chosen to match sbaccess in sbcs.

This command modifies arg0 only when a register is read. The other data registers are not changed.

| 31      | 31 24 23 22 20 |   | 19   | 18   | 17               | 16       | 15       | 0     |       |  |
|---------|----------------|---|------|------|------------------|----------|----------|-------|-------|--|
| cmdtype |                | 0 | aars | size | aarpostincrement | postexec | transfer | write | regno |  |
| 8 1 3   |                | 1 | 1    | 1    | 1                | 16       |          |       |       |  |

| Field            | Description  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| cmdtype          | This is 0 to indicate Access Register Command.         |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| aarsize          | 2 (32bit): Access the lowest 32 bits of the register.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | 3 (64bit): Access the lowest 64 bits of the register.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | 4 (128bit): Access the lowest 128 bits of the reg-     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | ister.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | If aarsize specifies a size larger than the register's |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | actual size, then the access must fail. If a reg-      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | ister is accessible, then reads of aarsize less tha    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | or equal to the register's actual size must be sup     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | ported. Writing less than the full register may be     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | supported, but what happens to the high bits in        |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | that case is UNSPECIFIED.                              |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | This field controls the Argument Width as refer        |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | enced in Table 3.1.                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| aarpostincrement | 0 (disabled): No effect. This variant must be sup-     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | ported.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | 1 (enabled): After a successful register access,       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | regno is incremented. Incrementing past the high-      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | est supported value causes regno to become UN-         |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | SPECIFIED. Supporting this variant is optional. It     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | is undefined whether the increment happens when        |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | transfer is 0.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| postexec         | 0 (disabled): No effect. This variant must be          |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | supported, and is the only supported one if            |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | progbufsize is 0.                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | 1 (enabled): Execute the program in the Program        |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | Buffer exactly once after performing the transfer,     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                  | if any. Supporting this variant is optional.           |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Continued on next page

| Field    | Description                                       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| transfer | 0 (disabled): Don't do the operation specified by |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|          | write.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|          | 1 (enabled): Do the operation specified by write. |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|          | This bit can be used to just execute the Pro-     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|          | gram Buffer without having to worry about plac-   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|          | ing valid values into aarsize or regno.           |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| write    | When transfer is set:                             |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|          | 0 (arg0): Copy data from the specified register   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|          | into arg0 portion of data.                        |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|          | 1 (register): Copy data from arg0 portion of data |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|          | into the specified register.                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| regno    | Number of the register to access, as described in |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|          | Table 3.3. dpc may be used as an alias for PC if  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|          | this command is supported on a non-halted hart.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

#### 3.8.1.2 Quick Access

Perform the following sequence of operations:

- 1. If the hart is halted, the command sets cmderr to "halt/resume" and does not continue.
- 2. Halt the hart. If the hart halts for some other reason (e.g. breakpoint), the command sets cmderr to "halt/resume" and does not continue.
- 3. Execute the Program Buffer. If an exception occurs, cmderr is set to "exception," the Program Buffer execution ends, and the hart is halted with cause set to 3.
- 4. If the Program Buffer executed without an exception, then resume the hart.

Implementing this command is optional.

This command does not touch the data registers.

| 31      | 24 | 23 |    | 0 |
|---------|----|----|----|---|
| cmdtype |    |    | 0  |   |
|         | 2  |    | 24 |   |

| Field   | Description                                 |
|---------|---|
| cmdtype | This is 1 to indicate Quick Access command. |

#### 3.8.1.3 Access Memory

This command lets the debugger perform memory accesses, with the exact same memory view and permissions as the selected hart has. This includes access to hart-local memory-mapped registers, etc. The command performs the following sequence of operations:

- 1. Copy data from the memory location specified in arg1 into the arg0 portion of data, if write is clear.
- 2. Copy data from the arg0 portion of data into the memory location specified in arg1, if write is set.
- 3. If aampostincrement is set, increment arg1.

If any of these operations fail, cmderr is set and none of the remaining steps are executed. An access may only fail if the hart, running M-mode code, might encounter that same failure when it attempts the same access. An implementation may detect an upcoming failure early, and fail the overall command before it reaches the step that would cause failure.

Debug Modules may optionally implement this command and may support read and write access to memory locations when the selected hart is running or halted. If this command supports memory accesses while the hart is running, it must also support memory accesses while the hart is halted.

The encoding of aamsize was chosen to match sbaccess in sbcs.

This command modifies arg0 only when memory is read. It modifies arg1 only if aampostincrement is set. The other data registers are not changed.

| 31 | 4       | 24 | 23      |     | 22                 | 20      |   |     | 19     |       |    |
|----|---------|----|---------|-----|--------------------|---------|---|-----|--------|-------|----|
| cn | cmdtype |    | aamvirt | ual | aam                | size    | а | amp | ostinc | remei | nt |
|    | 8       |    | 1       |     | 3                  |         |   | 1   |        |       |    |
|    | 18      | 17 | 16      | 15  |                    | 1       | 4 | 13  |        | 0     |    |
|    | 0       |    | write   | tar | get-s <sub> </sub> | pecific | 2 |     | 0      |       |    |
|    | 2       |    | 1       |     | 2                  |         |   |     | 14     |       |    |

| Field      | Description  |
|------------|--|
| cmdtype    | This is 2 to indicate Access Memory Command.       |
| aamvirtual | An implementation does not have to implement       |
|            | both virtual and physical accesses, but it must    |
|            | fail accesses that it doesn't support.             |
|            | 0 (physical): Addresses are physical (to the hart  |
|            | they are performed on).                            |
|            | 1 (virtual): Addresses are virtual, and translated |
|            | the way they would be from M-mode, with MPRV       |
|            | set.   |
|            | Debug Modules on systems without address trans-    |
|            | lation (i.e. virtual addresses equal physical) may |
|            | optionally allow aamvirtual set to 1, which would  |
|            | produce the same result as that same abstract      |
|            | command with aamvirtual cleared.                   |

Continued on next page

| Field            | Description  |
|------------------|--|
| aamsize          | 0 (8bit): Access the lowest 8 bits of the memory     |
|                  | location.  |
|                  | 1 (16bit): Access the lowest 16 bits of the memory   |
|                  | location.  |
|                  | 2 (32bit): Access the lowest 32 bits of the memory   |
|                  | location.  |
|                  | 3 (64bit): Access the lowest 64 bits of the memory   |
|                  | location.  |
|                  | 4 (128bit): Access the lowest 128 bits of the mem-   |
|                  | ory location.  |
| aampostincrement | After a memory access has completed, if this bit     |
|                  | is 1, increment arg1 (which contains the address     |
|                  | used) by the number of bytes encoded in aamsize.     |
|                  | Supporting this variant is optional, but highly rec- |
|                  | ommended for performance reasons.                    |
| write            | 0 (arg0): Copy data from the memory location         |
|                  | specified in arg1 into the low bits of arg0. The     |
|                  | value of the remaining bits of arg0 are UNSPECI-     |
|                  | FIED.  |
|                  | 1 (memory): Copy data from the low bits of arg0      |
|                  | into the memory location specified in arg1.          |
| target-specific  | These bits are reserved for target-specific uses.    |

## 3.9 Program Buffer

To support executing arbitrary instructions on a halted hart, a Debug Module can include a Program Buffer that a debugger can write small programs to. DMs that support all necessary functionality using abstract commands only may choose to omit the Program Buffer.

A debugger can write a small program to the Program Buffer, and then execute it exactly once with the Access Register Abstract Command, setting the postexec bit in command. The debugger can write whatever program it likes (including jumps out of the Program Buffer), but the program must end with ebreak or c.ebreak. An implementation may support an implicit ebreak that is executed when a hart runs off the end of the Program Buffer. This is indicated by impebreak. With this feature, a Program Buffer of just 2 32-bit words can offer efficient debugging.

If progbufsize is 1, impebreak must be 1. It is possible that the Program Buffer can hold only one 32-or 16-bit instruction, so the debugger must only write a single instruction in this case, regardless of its size. This instruction can be a 32-bit instruction, or a compressed instruction in the lower 16 bits accompanied by a compressed nop in the upper 16 bits.

The slightly inconsistent behavior with a Program Buffer of size 1 is to accommodate hardware designs that prefer to stuff instructions directly into the pipeline when halted, instead of having the Program Buffer exist in the address space somewhere.

While these programs are executed, the hart does not leave Debug Mode (see Section 4.1). If

an exception is encountered during execution of the Program Buffer, no more instructions are executed, the hart remains in Debug Mode, and cmderr is set to 3 (exception error). If the debugger executes a program that doesn't terminate with an ebreak instruction, the hart will remain in Debug Mode and the debugger will lose control of the hart.

Executing the Program Buffer may cause the value of dpc to become UNSPECIFIED. If that is the case, it must be possible to read/write dpc using an abstract command with postexec not set. The debugger must attempt to save dpc between halting and executing a Program Buffer, and then restore dpc before leaving Debug Mode.

Allowing dpc to become UNSPECIFIED upon Program Buffer execution allows for direct implementations that don't have a separate PC register, and do need to use the PC when executing the Program Buffer.

The Program Buffer may be implemented as RAM which is accessible to the hart. A debugger can determine if this is the case by executing small programs that attempt to write and read back relative to pc while executing from the Program Buffer. If so, the debugger has more flexibility in what it can do with the program buffer.

### 3.10 Overview of Hart Debug States

Figure 3.1 shows a conceptual view of the states passed through by a hart during run/halt debugging as influenced by the different fields of dmcontrol, abstractcs, abstractauto, and command.

## 3.11 System Bus Access

A debugger can access memory from a hart's point of view using a Program Buffer or the Abstract Access Memory command. (Both these features are optional.) A Debug Module may also include a System Bus Access block to provide memory access without involving a hart, regardless of whether Program Buffer is implemented. The System Bus Access block uses physical addresses.

The System Bus Access block may support 8-, 16-, 32-, 64-, and 128-bit accesses. Table 3.7 shows which bits in sbdata are used for each access size.

| Access Size | Data Bits                          |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| 8           | sbdata0 bits 7:0                   |
| 16          | sbdata0 bits 15:0                  |
| 32          | sbdata0                            |
| 64          | sbdata1, sbdata0                   |
| 128         | sbdata3, sbdata2, sbdata1, sbdata0 |

Table 3.7: System Bus Data Bits

Depending on the microarchitecture, data accessed through System Bus Access might not always be coherent with that observed by each hart. It is up to the debugger to enforce coherency if the implementation does not. This specification does not define a standard way to do this. Possibilities

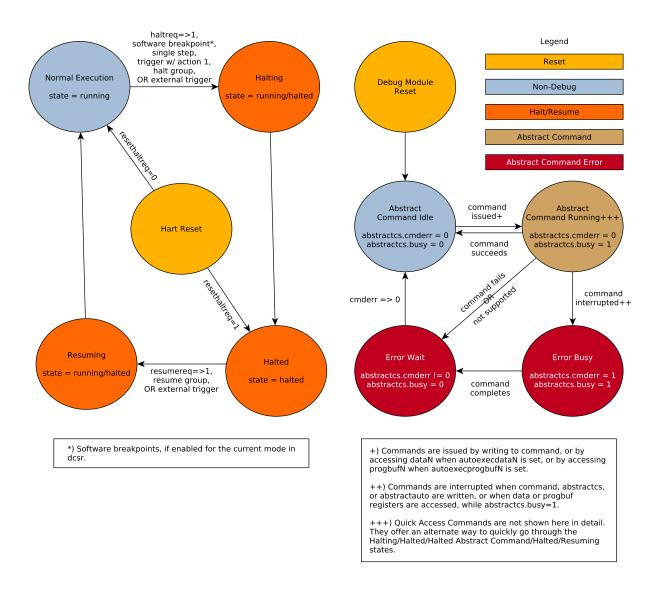


Figure 3.1: Run/Halt Debug State Machine for single-hart hardware platforms. As only a small amount of state is visible to the debugger, the states and transitions are conceptual.

may include writing to special memory-mapped locations, or executing special instructions via the Program Buffer.

Implementing a System Bus Access block has several benefits even when a Debug Module also implements a Program Buffer. First, it is possible to access memory in a running system with minimal impact. Second, it may improve performance when accessing memory. Third, it may provide access to devices that a hart does not have access to.

### 3.12 Minimally Intrusive Debugging

Depending on the task it is performing, some harts can only be halted very briefly. There are several mechanisms that allow accessing resources in such a running system with a minimal impact on the running hart.

First, an implementation may allow some abstract commands to execute without halting the hart.

Second, the Quick Access abstract command can be used to halt a hart, quickly execute the contents of the Program Buffer, and let the hart run again. Combined with instructions that allow Program Buffer code to access the data registers, as described in hartinfo, this can be used to quickly perform a memory or register access. For some hardware platforms this will be too intrusive, but many hardware platforms that can't be halted can bear an occasional hiccup of a hundred or less cycles.

Third, if the System Bus Access block is implemented, it can be used while a hart is running to access system memory.

### 3.13 Security

To protect intellectual property it may be desirable to lock access to the Debug Module. To allow access during a manufacturing process and not afterwards, a reasonable solution could be to add a fuse bit to the Debug Module that can be used to be permanently disable it. Since this is technology specific, it is not further addressed in this spec.

Another option is to allow the DM to be unlocked only by users who have an access key. Between authenticated, authbusy, and authdata arbitrarily complex authentication mechanism can be supported. When authenticated is clear, the DM must not interact with the rest of the hardware platform, nor expose details about the harts connected to the DM. All DM registers should read 0, while writes should be ignored, with the following mandatory exceptions:

- 1. authenticated in dmstatus is readable.
- 2. authbusy in dmstatus is readable.
- 3. version in dmstatus is readable.
- 4. dmactive in dmcontrol is readable and writable.
- 5. authdata is readable and writable.

Implementations where it's not possible to unlock the DM by using authdata should not implement that register.

#### 3.14 Version Detection

To detect the version of the Debug Module with a minimum of side effects, use the following procedure:

- 1. Read dmcontrol.
- 2. If dmactive is 0 or ndmreset is 1:
  - (a) Write dmcontrol, preserving hartreset, hasel, hartsello, and hartselhi from the value that was read, setting dmactive, and clearing all the other bits.
  - (b) Read dmcontrol until dmactive is high.
- 3. Read dmstatus, which contains version.

If it was necessary to clear ndmreset, this might have the following unavoidable side effects:

- 1. haltreq is cleared, potentially preventing a halt request made by a previous debugger from taking effect.
- 2. resumered is cleared, potentially preventing a resume request made by a previous debugger from taking effect.
- 3. ndmreset is deasserted, releasing the hardware platform from reset if a previous debugger had set it.
- 4. dmactive is asserted, releasing the DM from reset. This in itself is not observable by any harts.

This procedure is guaranteed to work in future versions of this spec. The meaning of the dmcontrol bits where hartreset, hasel, hartsello, and hartselhi currently reside might change, but preserving them will have no side effects. Clearing the bits of dmcontrol not explicitly mentioned here will have no side effects beyond the ones mentioned above.

## 3.15 Debug Module Registers

The registers described in this section are accessed over the DMI bus. Each DM has a base address (which is 0 for the first DM). The register addresses below are offsets from this base address.

When read, unimplemented or non-existent Debug Module DMI Registers return 0. Writing them has no effect.

Table 3.8: Debug Module Debug Bus Registers

| Address | Name                    | Page |
|---------|-------------------------|------|
| 0x04    | Abstract Data 0 (data0) | 40   |
| 0x05    | Abstract Data 1 (data1) |      |
|         |                         |      |

Table 3.8: Debug Module Debug Bus Registers

| Address     | Name  | Page |
|-------------|---|------|
| 0x06        | Abstract Data 2 (data2)                         |      |
| 0x07        | Abstract Data 3 (data3)                         |      |
| 0x08        | Abstract Data 4 (data4)                         |      |
| 0x09        | Abstract Data 5 (data5)                         |      |
| 0x0a        | Abstract Data 6 (data6)                         |      |
| 0x0b        | Abstract Data 7 (data7)                         |      |
| 0x0c        | Abstract Data 8 (data8)                         |      |
| 0x0d        | Abstract Data 9 (data9)                         |      |
| 0x0e        | Abstract Data 10 (data10)                       |      |
| 0x0f        | Abstract Data 11 (data11)                       |      |
| 0x10        | Debug Module Control (dmcontrol)                | 30   |
| 0x11        | Debug Module Status (dmstatus)                  | 28   |
| 0x12        | Hart Info (hartinfo)                            | 34   |
| 0x13        | Halt Summary 1 (haltsum1)                       | 43   |
| 0x14        | Hart Array Window Select (hawindowsel)          | 35   |
| 0x15        | Hart Array Window (hawindow)                    | 36   |
| 0x16        | Abstract Control and Status (abstractcs)        | 36   |
| 0x17        | Abstract Command (command)                      | 37   |
| 0x18        | Abstract Command Autoexec (abstractauto)        | 38   |
| 0x19        | Configuration Structure Pointer 0 (confstrptr0) | 39   |
| 0x1a        | Configuration Structure Pointer 1 (confstrptr1) | 39   |
| 0x1b        | Configuration Structure Pointer 2 (confstrptr2) | 39   |
| 0x1c        | Configuration Structure Pointer 3 (confstrptr3) | 40   |
| 0x1d        | Next Debug Module (nextdm)                      | 40   |
| 0x1f        | Custom Features (custom)                        | 49   |
| 0x20        | Program Buffer 0 (progbuf0)                     | 40   |
| 0x21        | Program Buffer 1 (progbuf1)                     |      |
| 0x22        | Program Buffer 2 (progbuf2)                     |      |
| 0x23        | Program Buffer 3 (progbuf3)                     |      |
| 0x24        | Program Buffer 4 (progbuf4)                     |      |
| 0x25        | Program Buffer 5 (progbuf5)                     |      |
| 0x26        | Program Buffer 6 (progbuf6)                     |      |
| 0x27        | Program Buffer 7 (progbuf7)                     |      |
| 0x28        | Program Buffer 8 (progbuf8)                     |      |
| 0x29        | Program Buffer 9 (progbuf9)                     |      |
| 0x2a        | Program Buffer 10 (progbuf10)                   |      |
| 0x2b        | Program Buffer 11 (progbuf11)                   |      |
| 0x2c        | Program Buffer 12 (progbuf12)                   |      |
| 0x2d        | Program Buffer 13 (progbuf13)                   |      |
| 0x2a        | Program Buffer 14 (progbuf14)                   |      |
| 0x2c $0x2f$ | Program Buffer 15 (progbuf15)                   |      |
| 0x21 $0x30$ | Authentication Data (authdata)                  | 41   |
| 0x30        | Debug Module Control and Status 2 (dmcs2)       | 41   |
| 0x32 $0x34$ | Halt Summary 2 (haltsum2)                       | 43   |
| 0.404       | Continued on near                               | I    |

| Address | Name  | Page |
|---------|---|------|
| 0x35    | Halt Summary 3 (haltsum3)                   | 44   |
| 0x37    | System Bus Address 127:96 (sbaddress3)      | 47   |
| 0x38    | System Bus Access Control and Status (sbcs) | 44   |
| 0x39    | System Bus Address 31:0 (sbaddress0)        | 46   |
| 0x3a    | System Bus Address 63:32 (sbaddress1)       | 46   |
| 0x3b    | System Bus Address 95:64 (sbaddress2)       | 47   |
| 0x3c    | System Bus Data 31:0 (sbdata0)              | 47   |
| 0x3d    | System Bus Data 63:32 (sbdata1)             | 48   |
| 0x3e    | System Bus Data 95:64 (sbdata2)             | 49   |
| 0x3f    | System Bus Data 127:96 (sbdata3)            | 49   |
| 0x40    | Halt Summary 0 (haltsum0)                   | 42   |
| 0x70    | Custom Features 0 (custom0)                 | 49   |
| 0x71    | Custom Features 1 (custom1)                 |      |
| 0x72    | Custom Features 2 (custom2)                 |      |
| 0x73    | Custom Features 3 (custom3)                 |      |
| 0x74    | Custom Features 4 (custom4)                 |      |
| 0x75    | Custom Features 5 (custom5)                 |      |
| 0x76    | Custom Features 6 (custom6)                 |      |
| 0x77    | Custom Features 7 (custom7)                 |      |
| 0x78    | Custom Features 8 (custom8)                 |      |
| 0x79    | Custom Features 9 (custom9)                 |      |
| 0x7a    | Custom Features 10 (custom10)               |      |
| 0x7b    | Custom Features 11 (custom11)               |      |
| 0x7c    | Custom Features 12 (custom12)               |      |
| 0x7d    | Custom Features 13 (custom13)               |      |
| 0x7e    | Custom Features 14 (custom14)               |      |
| 0x7f    | Custom Features 15 (custom15)               |      |

Table 3.8: Debug Module Debug Bus Registers

### 3.15.1 Debug Module Status (dmstatus, at 0x11)

This register reports status for the overall Debug Module as well as the currently selected harts, as defined in hasel. Its address will not change in the future, because it contains version.

This entire register is read-only.

|              | 31 25 | 24           | 23              | 22            | 21 20    | 19       | )          |
|--------------|-------|--------------|-----------------|---------------|----------|----------|------------|
|              | 0     | ndmresetpend | ling stickyunav | ail impebrea  | k 0      | allhave  | ereset     |
|              | 7     | 1            | 1               | 1             | 2        | 1        | <u> </u>   |
|              | 18    | 17           | 16              | 15            | 1        | .4       | 13         |
| anyhavereset |       | allresumeack | anyresumeack    | allnonexisten | t anynon | existent | allunavail |
| 1            |       | 1            | 1               | 1             |          | 1        | 1          |

| 12         | 11         | 10              | 9         | 8       | 7    |      | 7          |
|------------|------------|-----------------|-----------|---------|------|------|------------|
| anyunavail | allrunning | g anyrunning    | allhalted | anyha   | lted | aut  | henticated |
| 1          | 1          | 1               | 1         | 1       |      |      | 1          |
|            | 6          | 5               | 4         |         | 3    | 0    |            |
| authbusy h |            | hasresethaltreq | confstrp  | trvalid | vers | sion |            |
|            | 1          | 1               | 1         |         | 4    | 1    |            |

| Field           | Description   | Access   | Reset  |
|-----------------|---|----------|--------|
| ndmresetpending | 0 (false): Unimplemented, or ndmreset is zero and   | R        | -      |
|                 | no ndmreset is currently in progress.   |          |        |
|                 | 1 (true): ndmreset is currently nonzero, or there   |          |        |
|                 | is an admreset in progress.   |          |        |
| stickyunavail   | 0 (current): The per-hart unavail bits reflect the  | R        | Preset |
|                 | current state of the hart.  |          |        |
|                 | 1 (sticky): The per-hart unavail bits are sticky.   |          |        |
|                 | Once they are set, they will not clear until the  |          |        |
|                 | debugger acknowledges them using ackunavail.  |          |        |
| impebreak       | If 1, then there is an implicit ebreak instruction  | R        | Preset |
|                 | at the non-existent word immediately after the  |          |        |
|                 | Program Buffer. This saves the debugger from  |          |        |
|                 | having to write the ebreak itself, and allows the   |          |        |
|                 | Program Buffer to be one word smaller.  |          |        |
|                 | This must be 1 when progbufsize is 1.   | D        |        |
| allhavereset    | This field is 1 when all currently selected harts   | R        | -      |
|                 | have been reset and reset has not been acknowl-   |          |        |
|                 | edged for any of them.  | D        |        |
| anyhavereset    | This field is 1 when at least one currently selected hart has been reset and reset has not been ac- | R        | -      |
|                 | knowledged for that hart.   |          |        |
| allresumeack    | This field is 1 when all currently selected harts   | R        | _      |
| airiesurrieack  | have their resume ack bit set.  | 11       | _      |
| anyresumeack    | This field is 1 when any currently selected hart  | R        | _      |
| difficultied    | has its resume ack bit set.   | 10       |        |
| allnonexistent  | This field is 1 when all currently selected harts do  | R        | _      |
|                 | not exist in this hardware platform.  |          |        |
| anynonexistent  | This field is 1 when any currently selected hart  | R        | _      |
|                 | does not exist in this hardware platform.   |          |        |
| allunavail      | This field is 1 when all currently selected harts   | R        | -      |
|                 | are unavailable, or (if stickyunavail is 1) were un-  |          |        |
|                 | available without that being acknowledged.  |          |        |
| anyunavail      | This field is 1 when any currently selected hart is   | R        | -      |
|                 | unavailable, or (if stickyunavail is 1) was unavail-  |          |        |
|                 | able without that being acknowledged.   |          |        |
| allrunning      | This field is 1 when all currently selected harts   | R        | _      |
|                 | are running.  | und on n |        |

| Field           | Description   | Access | Reset  |
|-----------------|---|--------|--------|
| anyrunning      | This field is 1 when any currently selected hart is | R      | -      |
|                 | running.  |        |        |
| allhalted       | This field is 1 when all currently selected harts   | R      | -      |
|                 | are halted.   |        |        |
| anyhalted       | This field is 1 when any currently selected hart is | R      | -      |
|                 | halted.   |        |        |
| authenticated   | 0 (false): Authentication is required before using  | R      | Preset |
|                 | the DM.   |        |        |
|                 | 1 (true): The authentication check has passed.      |        |        |
|                 | On components that don't implement authentica-      |        |        |
|                 | tion, this bit must be preset as 1.                 |        |        |
| authbusy        | 0 (ready): The authentication module is ready to    | R      | 0      |
|                 | process the next read/write to authdata.            |        |        |
|                 | 1 (busy): The authentication module is busy. Ac-    |        |        |
|                 | cessing authdata results in unspecified behavior.   |        |        |
|                 | authbusy only becomes set in immediate response     |        |        |
|                 | to an access to authdata.                           |        |        |
| hasresethaltreq | 1 if this Debug Module supports halt-on-reset       | R      | Preset |
|                 | functionality controllable by the setresethaltreq   |        |        |
|                 | and clrresethaltreq bits. 0 otherwise.              |        |        |
| confstrptrvalid | 0 (invalid): confstrptr0-confstrptr3 hold in-       | R      | Preset |
|                 | formation which is not relevant to the configura-   |        |        |
|                 | tion structure.                                     |        |        |
|                 | 1 (valid): confstrptr0-confstrptr3 hold the         |        |        |
|                 | address of the configuration structure.             |        |        |
| version         | 0 (none): There is no Debug Module present.         | R      | 3      |
|                 | 1 $(0.11)$ : There is a Debug Module and it con-    |        |        |
|                 | forms to version 0.11 of this specification.        |        |        |
|                 | 2 (0.13): There is a Debug Module and it con-       |        |        |
|                 | forms to version 0.13 of this specification.        |        |        |
|                 | 3 (1.0): There is a Debug Module and it conforms    |        |        |
|                 | to version 1.0 of this specification.               |        |        |
|                 | 15 (custom): There is a Debug Module but it does    |        |        |
|                 | not conform to any available version of this spec.  |        |        |

#### 3.15.2 Debug Module Control (dmcontrol, at 0x10)

This register controls the overall Debug Module as well as the currently selected harts, as defined in hasel.

Throughout this document we refer to hartsel, which is hartselhi combined with hartsello. While the spec allows for 20 hartsel bits, an implementation may choose to implement fewer than that. The actual width of hartsel is called HARTSELLEN. It must be at least 0 and at most 20. A debugger should discover HARTSELLEN by writing all ones to hartsel (assuming the maximum size) and reading back the value to see which bits were actually set. Debuggers must not change hartsel while an

abstract command is executing.

There are separate setresethaltreq and clrresethaltreq bits so that it is possible to write dmcontrol without changing the halt-on-reset request bit for each selected hart, when not all selected harts have the same configuration.

On any given write, a debugger may only write 1 to at most one of the following bits: resumereq, hartreset, ackhavereset, setresethaltreq, and clrresethaltreq. The others must be written 0.

resethaltreq is an optional internal bit of per-hart state that cannot be read, but can be written with setresethaltreq and clrresethaltreq.

keepalive is an optional internal bit of per-hart state. When it is set, it suggests that the hardware should attempt to keep the hart available for the debugger, e.g. by keeping it from entering a low-power state once powered on. Even if the bit is implemented, hardware might not be able to keep a hart available. The bit is written through setkeepalive and clrkeepalive.

For forward compatibility, version will always be readable when bit 1 (ndmreset) is 0 and bit 0 (dmactive) is 1.

|   | 31              | 30        |       | 29        |    | 28          | 27           |
|---|-----------------|-----------|-------|-----------|----|-------------|--------------|
| h | altreq          | resumere  | q ha  | artreset  | a  | ckhavereset | ackunavail   |
|   | 1               | 1         |       | 1         |    | 1           | 1            |
|   | 26              | 25 16     | 15    | 6         |    | 5           | 4            |
| r | nasel           | hartsello | har   | tselhi    | se | tkeepalive  | clrkeepalive |
|   | 1               | 10        |       | 10        |    | 1           | 1            |
|   |                 | 3         |       | 2         |    | 1           | 0            |
|   | setresethaltreq |           | clrre | sethaltre | eq | ndmreset    | dmactive     |
|   | •               | 1         |       | 1         |    | 1           | 1            |

| Field     | Description   | Access | Reset |
|-----------|---|--------|-------|
| haltreq   | Writing 0 clears the halt request bit for all cur-    | WARZ   | -     |
|           | rently selected harts. This may cancel outstand-      |        |       |
|           | ing halt requests for those harts.                    |        |       |
|           | Writing 1 sets the halt request bit for all currently |        |       |
|           | selected harts. Running harts will halt whenever      |        |       |
|           | their halt request bit is set.                        |        |       |
|           | Writes apply to the new value of hartsel and hasel.   |        |       |
| resumereq | Writing 1 causes the currently selected harts to      | W1     | -     |
|           | resume once, if they are halted when the write        |        |       |
|           | occurs. It also clears the resume ack bit for those   |        |       |
|           | harts.  |        |       |
|           | resumereq is ignored if haltreq is set.               |        |       |
|           | Writes apply to the new value of hartsel and hasel.   |        |       |

| Field        | Description  | Access | Reset |
|--------------|--|--------|-------|
| hartreset    | This optional field writes the reset bit for all the   | WARL   | 0     |
|              | currently selected harts. To perform a reset the       |        |       |
|              | debugger writes 1, and then writes 0 to deassert       |        |       |
|              | the reset signal.                                      |        |       |
|              | While this bit is 1, the debugger must not change      |        |       |
|              | which harts are selected.                              |        |       |
|              | If this feature is not implemented, the bit always     |        |       |
|              | stays 0, so after writing 1 the debugger can read      |        |       |
|              | the register back to see if the feature is supported.  |        |       |
|              | Writes apply to the new value of hartsel and hasel.    |        |       |
| ackhavereset | 0 (nop): No effect.                                    | W1     | -     |
|              | 1 (ack): Clears havereset for any selected harts.      |        |       |
|              | Writes apply to the new value of hartsel and hasel.    |        |       |
| ackunavail   | 0 (nop): No effect.                                    | W1     | -     |
|              | 1 (ack): Clears unavail for any selected harts         |        |       |
|              | that are currently available.                          |        |       |
|              | Writes apply to the new value of hartsel and hasel.    |        |       |
| hasel        | Selects the definition of currently selected harts.    | WARL   | 0     |
|              | 0 (single): There is a single currently selected       |        |       |
|              | hart, that is selected by hartsel.                     |        |       |
|              | 1 (multiple): There may be multiple currently se-      |        |       |
|              | lected harts – the hart selected by hartsel, plus      |        |       |
|              | those selected by the hart array mask register.        |        |       |
|              | An implementation which does not implement the         |        |       |
|              | hart array mask register must tie this field to 0.     |        |       |
|              | A debugger which wishes to use the hart array          |        |       |
|              | mask register feature should set this bit and read     |        |       |
|              | back to see if the functionality is supported.         |        |       |
| hartsello    | The low 10 bits of hartsel: the DM-specific index      | WARL   | 0     |
|              | of the hart to select. This hart is always part of     |        |       |
|              | the currently selected harts.                          |        |       |
| hartselhi    | The high 10 bits of hartsel: the DM-specific index     | WARL   | 0     |
|              | of the hart to select. This hart is always part of     |        |       |
|              | the currently selected harts.                          |        |       |
| setkeepalive | This optional field sets keepalive for all currently   | W1     | -     |
|              | selected harts, unless cirkeepalive is simultane-      |        |       |
|              | ously set to 1.  |        |       |
|              | Writes apply to the new value of hartsel and hasel.    |        |       |
| clrkeepalive | This optional field clears keepalive for all currently | W1     | -     |
|              | selected harts.  |        |       |
|              | Writes apply to the new value of hartsel and hasel.    |        |       |

| Field           | Description  | Access | Reset |
|-----------------|--|--------|-------|
| setresethaltreq | This optional field writes the halt-on-reset re-     | W1     | -     |
|                 | quest bit for all currently selected harts, unless   |        |       |
|                 | clrresethaltreq is simultaneously set to 1. When     |        |       |
|                 | set to 1, each selected hart will halt upon the next |        |       |
|                 | deassertion of its reset. The halt-on-reset request  |        |       |
|                 | bit is not automatically cleared. The debugger       |        |       |
|                 | must write to clrresethaltreq to clear it.           |        |       |
|                 | Writes apply to the new value of hartsel and hasel.  |        |       |
|                 | If hasresethaltreq is 0, this field is not imple-    |        |       |
|                 | mented.  |        |       |
| clrresethaltreq | This optional field clears the halt-on-reset request | W1     | -     |
|                 | bit for all currently selected harts.                |        |       |
|                 | Writes apply to the new value of hartsel and hasel.  |        |       |
| ndmreset        | This bit controls the reset signal from the DM       | R/W    | 0     |
|                 | to the rest of the hardware platform. The signal     |        |       |
|                 | should reset every part of the hardware platform,    |        |       |
|                 | including every hart, except for the DM and any      |        |       |
|                 | logic required to access the DM. To perform a        |        |       |
|                 | hardware platform reset the debugger writes 1,       |        |       |
|                 | and then writes 0 to deassert the reset.             |        |       |

| Field    | Description  | Access | Reset |
|----------|--|--------|-------|
| dmactive | This bit serves as a reset signal for the Debug      | R/W    | 0     |
|          | Module itself. After changing the value of this bit, |        |       |
|          | the debugger must poll dmcontrol until dmactive      |        |       |
|          | has taken the requested value before performing      |        |       |
|          | any action that assumes the requested dmactive       |        |       |
|          | state change has completed. Hardware may take        |        |       |
|          | an arbitrarily long time to complete activation or   |        |       |
|          | deactivation and will indicate completion by set-    |        |       |
|          | ting dmactive to the requested value.                |        |       |
|          | 0 (inactive): The module's state, including au-      |        |       |
|          | thentication mechanism, takes its reset values       |        |       |
|          | (the dmactive bit is the only bit which can be       |        |       |
|          | written to something other than its reset value).    |        |       |
|          | Any accesses to the module may fail. Specifically,   |        |       |
|          | version might not return correct data.               |        |       |
|          | 1 (active): The module functions normally.           |        |       |
|          | No other mechanism should exist that may result      |        |       |
|          | in resetting the Debug Module after power up.        |        |       |
|          | To place the Debug Module into a known state,        |        |       |
|          | a debugger may write 0 to dmactive, poll until       |        |       |
|          | dmactive is observed 0, write 1 to dmactive, and     |        |       |
|          | poll until dmactive is observed 1.                   |        |       |
|          | Implementations may pay attention to this bit to     |        |       |
|          | further aid debugging, for example by preventing     |        |       |
|          | the Debug Module from being power gated while        |        |       |
|          | debugging is active.                                 |        |       |

### 3.15.3 Hart Info (hartinfo, at 0x12)

This register gives information about the hart currently selected by hartsel.

This register is optional. If it is not present it should read all-zero.

If this register is included, the debugger can do more with the Program Buffer by writing programs which explicitly access the data and/or dscratch registers.

This entire register is read-only.

| 31 | 24 | 23    | 20   | 19 | 17 | 16         | 15   | 12   | 11    | 0    |
|----|----|-------|------|----|----|------------|------|------|-------|------|
|    | 0  | nscra | atch | (  | )  | dataaccess | data | size | dataa | addr |
|    | 8  | 4     | 1    | 9  | 3  | 1          | 4    | 1    | 12    | 2    |

| Field      | Description   | Access | Reset  |
|------------|---|--------|--------|
| nscratch   | Number of dscratch registers available for the        | R      | Preset |
|            | debugger to use during program buffer execution,      |        |        |
|            | starting from dscratch0. The debugger can make        |        |        |
|            | no assumptions about the contents of these regis-     |        |        |
|            | ters between commands.                                |        |        |
| dataaccess | 0 (csr): The data registers are shadowed in the       | R      | Preset |
|            | hart by CSRs. Each CSR is DXLEN bits in size,         |        |        |
|            | and corresponds to a single argument, per Ta-         |        |        |
|            | ble 3.1.  |        |        |
|            | 1 (memory): The data registers are shadowed in        |        |        |
|            | the hart's memory map. Each register takes up 4       |        |        |
|            | bytes in the memory map.                              |        |        |
| datasize   | If dataaccess is 0: Number of CSRs dedicated to       | R      | Preset |
|            | shadowing the data registers.                         |        |        |
|            | If dataaccess is 1: Number of 32-bit words in the     |        |        |
|            | memory map dedicated to shadowing the data            |        |        |
|            | registers.  |        |        |
|            | If this value is non-zero, then the tt data registers |        |        |
|            | must go beyond being MRs and guarantee they           |        |        |
|            | each store a single value, that is readable/writable  |        |        |
|            | by either side.                                       |        |        |
|            | Since there are at most 12 data registers, the        |        |        |
|            | value in this register must be 12 or smaller.         |        |        |
| dataaddr   | If dataaccess is 0: The number of the first CSR       | R      | Preset |
|            | dedicated to shadowing the data registers.            |        |        |
|            | If dataaccess is 1: Address of RAM where the          |        |        |
|            | data registers are shadowed. This address is sign     |        |        |
|            | extended giving a range of -2048 to 2047, easily      |        |        |
|            | addressed with a load or store using x0 as the        |        |        |
|            | address register.                                     |        |        |

### 3.15.4 Hart Array Window Select (hawindowsel, at 0x14)

This register selects which of the 32-bit portion of the hart array mask register (see Section 3.3.2) is accessible in hawindow.

| 31 |    | 15 | 14          | 0 |  |
|----|----|----|-------------|---|--|
| 0  |    |    | hawindowsel |   |  |
|    | 17 |    | 15          |   |  |

| Field       | Description                                       | Access | Reset |
|-------------|---|--------|-------|
| hawindowsel | The high bits of this field may be tied to 0, de- | WARL   | 0     |
|             | pending on how large the array mask register is.  |        |       |
|             | E.g. on a hardware platform with 48 harts only    |        |       |
|             | bit 0 of this field may actually be writable.     |        |       |

#### 3.15.5 Hart Array Window (hawindow, at 0x15)

This register provides R/W access to a 32-bit portion of the hart array mask register (see Section 3.3.2). The position of the window is determined by hawindowsel. I.e. bit 0 refers to hart hawindowsel \*32, while bit 31 refers to hart hawindowsel \*32 + 31.

Since some bits in the hart array mask register may be constant 0, some bits in this register may be constant 0, depending on the current value of hawindowsel.



#### 3.15.6 Abstract Control and Status (abstractcs, at 0x16)

Writing this register while an abstract command is executing causes **cmderr** to become 1 (busy) once the command completes (busy becomes 0).

datacount must be at least 1 to support RV32 harts, 2 to support RV64 harts, or 4 to support RV128 harts.

| 31 | 29 | 28 $24$     | 23 13 | 12   | 11          | 10 8   | 7 	 4 | 3 0       |
|----|----|-------------|-------|------|-------------|--------|-------|-----------|
|    | 0  | progbufsize | 0     | busy | relaxedpriv | cmderr | 0     | datacount |
|    | 3  | 5           | 11    | 1    | 1           | 3      | 4     | 4         |

| Field       | Description  | Access | Reset  |
|-------------|--|--------|--------|
| progbufsize | Size of the Program Buffer, in 32-bit words. Valid | R      | Preset |
|             | sizes are 0 - 16.                                  |        |        |
| busy        | 0 (ready): There is no abstract command cur-       | R      | 0      |
|             | rently being executed.                             |        |        |
|             | 1 (busy): An abstract command is currently being   |        |        |
|             | executed.  |        |        |
|             | This bit is set as soon as command is written, and |        |        |
|             | is not cleared until that command has completed.   |        |        |

| Field       | Description   | Access | Reset  |
|-------------|---|--------|--------|
| relaxedpriv | This optional bit controls whether program buffer   | WARL   | Preset |
|             | and abstract memory accesses are performed with   |        |        |
|             | the exact and full set of permission checks that  |        |        |
|             | apply based on the current architectural state  |        |        |
|             | of the hart performing the access, or with a re-<br>laxed set of permission checks (e.g. PMP restric- |        |        |
|             | tions are ignored). The details of the latter are   |        |        |
|             | implementation-specific.  |        |        |
|             | 0 (full checks): Full permission checks apply.  |        |        |
|             | 1 (relaxed checks): Relaxed permission checks ap-   |        |        |
|             | ply.  |        |        |
| cmderr      | Gets set if an abstract command fails. The bits in  | R/W1C  | 0      |
|             | this field remain set until they are cleared by writ-   | -/     |        |
|             | ing 1 to them. No abstract command is started   |        |        |
|             | until the value is reset to 0.  |        |        |
|             | This field only contains a valid value if busy is 0.  |        |        |
|             | 0 (none): No error.   |        |        |
|             | 1 (busy): An abstract command was executing   |        |        |
|             | while command, abstractcs, or abstractauto  |        |        |
|             | was written, or when one of the data or progbuf   |        |        |
|             | registers was read or written. This status is only  |        |        |
|             | written if cmderr contains 0.   |        |        |
|             | 2 (not supported): The command in command is  |        |        |
|             | not supported. It may be supported with different   |        |        |
|             | options set, but it will not be supported at a later  |        |        |
|             | time when the hart or system state are different.   |        |        |
|             | 3 (exception): An exception occurred while ex-  |        |        |
|             | ecuting the command (e.g. while executing the   |        |        |
|             | Program Buffer).  |        |        |
|             | 4 (halt/resume): The abstract command couldn't execute because the hart wasn't in the required        |        |        |
|             | state (running/halted), or unavailable.   |        |        |
|             | 5 (bus): The abstract command failed due to a   |        |        |
|             | bus error (e.g. alignment, access size, or timeout).  |        |        |
|             | 6 (reserved): Reserved for future use.  |        |        |
|             | 7 (other): The command failed for another rea-  |        |        |
|             | son.  |        |        |
| datacount   | Number of data registers that are implemented   | R      | Preset |
|             | as part of the abstract command interface. Valid  |        |        |
|             | sizes are $1-12$ .  |        |        |

### 3.15.7 Abstract Command (command, at 0x17)

Writes to this register cause the corresponding abstract command to be executed.

Writing this register while an abstract command is executing causes cmderr to become 1 (busy) once the command completes (busy becomes 0).

If cmderr is non-zero, writes to this register are ignored.

cmderr inhibits starting a new command to accommodate debuggers that, for performance reasons, send several commands to be executed in a row without checking cmderr in between. They can safely do so and check cmderr at the end without worrying that one command failed but then a later command (which might have depended on the previous one succeeding) passed.

| 31  | 24   | 23 |         | 0 |
|-----|------|----|---------|---|
| cmd | type |    | control |   |
|     | 2    |    | 24      |   |

| Field   | Description                                      | Access | Reset |
|---------|--|--------|-------|
| cmdtype | The type determines the overall functionality of | WARZ   | 0     |
|         | this abstract command.                           |        |       |
| control | This field is interpreted in a command-specific  | WARZ   | 0     |
|         | manner, described for each abstract command.     |        |       |

#### 3.15.8 Abstract Command Autoexec (abstractauto, at 0x18)

This register is optional. Including it allows more efficient burst accesses. A debugger can detect whether it is supported by setting bits and reading them back.

If this register is implemented then bits corresponding to implemented progbuf and data registers must be writable. Other bits must be hard-wired to 0.

If this register is written while an abstract command is executing then the write is ignored and cmderr becomes 1 (busy) once the command completes (busy becomes 0).

| 31        | 16 | 15 | 12           | 11 | 0  |
|-----------|----|----|--------------|----|----|
| autoexecp | (  | )  | autoexecdata |    |    |
| 16        |    |    | 1            | -  | 12 |

| Field           | Description   | Access | Reset |
|-----------------|---|--------|-------|
| autoexecprogbuf | When a bit in this field is 1, read or write accesses | WARL   | 0     |
|                 | to the corresponding progbuf word cause the DM        |        |       |
|                 | to act as if the current value in command was writ-   |        |       |
|                 | ten there again after the access to progbuf com-      |        |       |
|                 | pletes.   |        |       |
| autoexecdata    | When a bit in this field is 1, read or write accesses | WARL   | 0     |
|                 | to the corresponding data word cause the DM to        |        |       |
|                 | act as if the current value in command was written    |        |       |
|                 | there again after the access to data completes.       |        |       |

#### 3.15.9 Configuration Structure Pointer 0 (confstrptr0, at 0x19)

When confstrptrvalid is set, reading this register returns bits 31:0 of the configuration structure pointer. Reading the other confstrptr registers returns the upper bits of the address.

When system bus mastering is implemented, this must be an address that can be used with the System Bus Access module. Otherwise, this must be an address that can be used to access the configuration structure from the hart with ID 0.

If confstrptrvalid is 0, then the confstrptr registers hold identifier information which is not further specified in this document.

The configuration structure itself is a data structure of the same format as the data structure pointed to by mconfightr as described in the Privileged Spec.

This entire register is read-only.



#### 3.15.10 Configuration Structure Pointer 1 (confstrptr1, at 0x1a)

When confstrptrvalid is set, reading this register returns bits 63:32 of the configuration structure pointer. See confstrptr0 for more details.

This entire register is read-only.



#### 3.15.11 Configuration Structure Pointer 2 (confstrptr2, at 0x1b)

When confstrptrvalid is set, reading this register returns bits 95:64 of the configuration structure pointer. See confstrptr0 for more details.

This entire register is read-only.

| 31 |      | 0 |
|----|------|---|
|    | addr |   |
|    | 39   |   |

#### 3.15.12 Configuration Structure Pointer 3 (confstrptr3, at 0x1c)

When confstrptrvalid is set, reading this register returns bits 127:96 of the configuration structure pointer. See confstrptr0 for more details.

This entire register is read-only.



#### 3.15.13 Next Debug Module (nextdm, at 0x1d)

If there is more than one DM accessible on this DMI, this register contains the base address of the next one in the chain, or 0 if this is the last one in the chain.

This entire register is read-only.



#### 3.15.14 Abstract Data 0 (data0, at 0x04)

data0 through data11 are Message Registers, whose behavior is described in Section 3.7, that may be read or changed by abstract commands. datacount indicates how many of them are implemented, starting at data0, counting up. Table 3.1 shows how abstract commands use these MRs.

Accessing these MRs while an abstract command is executing causes cmderr to be set to 1 (busy) if it is 0.

Attempts to write them while busy is set does not change their value.

The values in these MRs might not be preserved after an abstract command is executed. The only guarantees on their contents are the ones offered by the command in question. If the command fails, no assumptions can be made about the contents of these registers.



#### 3.15.15 Program Buffer 0 (progbuf0, at 0x20)

progbuf 0 through progbuf 15 must provide write access to the optional program buffer. It may

also be possible for the debugger to read from the program buffer through these registers. If reading is not supported, then all reads return 0.

progbufsize indicates how many progbuf registers are implemented starting at progbuf0, counting up.

Accessing these registers while an abstract command is executing causes cmderr to be set to 1 (busy) if it is 0.

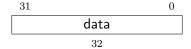
Attempts to write them while busy is set does not change their value.



#### 3.15.16 Authentication Data (authdata, at 0x30)

This register serves as a 32-bit serial port to/from the authentication module.

When authbusy is clear, the debugger can communicate with the authentication module by reading or writing this register. There is no separate mechanism to signal overflow/underflow.



#### 3.15.17 Debug Module Control and Status 2 (dmcs2, at 0x32)

This register contains DM control and status bits that didn't easily fit in dmcontrol and dmstatus. All are optional.

If halt groups are not implemented, then group will always be 0 when grouptype is 0.

If resume groups are not implemented, then grouptype will remain 0 even after 1 is written there.

The DM external triggers available to add to halt groups may be the same as or distinct from the DM external triggers available to add to resume groups.

| 31 |    | 12 | 11        | 10         | 7  | 6     | 2        | 1       | 0        |
|----|----|----|-----------|------------|----|-------|----------|---------|----------|
|    | 0  |    | grouptype | dmexttrigg | er | group | <b>o</b> | hgwrite | hgselect |
|    | 20 |    | 1         | 4          |    | 5     |          | 1       | 1        |

| Field        | Description  | Access | Reset  |
|--------------|--|--------|--------|
| grouptype    | 0 (halt): The remaining fields in this register con-       | WARL   | 0      |
|              | figure halt groups.  |        |        |
|              | 1 (resume): The remaining fields in this register          |        |        |
|              | configure resume groups.                                   |        |        |
| dmexttrigger | This field contains the currently selected DM ex-          | WARL   | 0      |
|              | ternal trigger.  |        |        |
|              | If a non-existent trigger value is written here, the       |        |        |
|              | hardware will change it to a valid one or 0 if no          |        |        |
|              | DM external triggers exist.                                |        |        |
| group        | When hgselect is 0, contains the group of the hart         | WARL   | preset |
|              | specified by hartsel.                                      |        |        |
|              | When hgselect is 1, contains the group of the DM           |        |        |
|              | external trigger selected by dmexttrigger.                 |        |        |
|              | The value written to this field is ignored unless          |        |        |
|              | hgwrite is also written 1.                                 |        |        |
|              | Group numbers are contiguous starting at 0,                |        |        |
|              | with the highest number being implementation-              |        |        |
|              | dependent, and possibly different between differ-          |        |        |
|              | ent group types. Debuggers should read back this           |        |        |
|              | field after writing to confirm they are using a hart       |        |        |
|              | group that is supported.                                   |        |        |
|              | If groups aren't implemented, then this entire field is 0. |        |        |
| hgwrite      | When 1 is written and hgselect is 0, for every se-         | W1     |        |
| ligwiite     | lected hart the DM will change its group to the            | VV 1   | _      |
|              | value written to group, if the hardware supports           |        |        |
|              | that group for that hart. Implementations may              |        |        |
|              | also change the group of a minimal set of unse-            |        |        |
|              | lected harts in the same way, if that is necessary         |        |        |
|              | due to a hardware limitation.                              |        |        |
|              | When 1 is written and hgselect is 1, the DM                |        |        |
|              | will change the group of the DM external trig-             |        |        |
|              | ger selected by dmexttrigger to the value written          |        |        |
|              | to group, if the hardware supports that group for          |        |        |
|              | that trigger.  |        |        |
|              | Writing 0 has no effect.                                   |        |        |
| hgselect     | 0 (harts): Operate on harts.                               | WARL   | 0      |
|              | 1 (triggers): Operate on DM external triggers.             |        |        |
|              | If there are no DM external triggers, this field           |        |        |
|              | must be tied to 0.   |        |        |

### 3.15.18 Halt Summary 0 (haltsum0, at 0x40)

Each bit in this read-only register indicates whether one specific hart is halted or not. Unavailable/nonexistent harts are not considered to be halted.

This register might not be present if fewer than 2 harts are connected to this DM.

The LSB reflects the halt status of hart {hartsel[19:5],5'h0}, and the MSB reflects halt status of hart {hartsel[19:5],5'h1f}.

This entire register is read-only.



#### 3.15.19 Halt Summary 1 (haltsum1, at 0x13)

Each bit in this read-only register indicates whether any of a group of harts is halted or not. Unavailable/nonexistent harts are not considered to be halted.

This register might not be present if fewer than 33 harts are connected to this DM.

The LSB reflects the halt status of harts {hartsel[19:10],10'h0} through {hartsel[19:10],10'h1f}. The MSB reflects the halt status of harts {hartsel[19:10],10'h3e0} through {hartsel[19:10],10'h3ff}.

This entire register is read-only.



#### 3.15.20 Halt Summary 2 (haltsum2, at 0x34)

Each bit in this read-only register indicates whether any of a group of harts is halted or not. Unavailable/nonexistent harts are not considered to be halted.

This register might not be present if fewer than 1025 harts are connected to this DM.

The LSB reflects the halt status of harts {hartsel[19:15],15'h0} through {hartsel[19:15],15'h3ff}. The MSB reflects the halt status of harts {hartsel[19:15],15'h7c00} through {hartsel[19:15],15'h7fff}.

This entire register is read-only.



#### 3.15.21 Halt Summary 3 (haltsum3, at 0x35)

Each bit in this read-only register indicates whether any of a group of harts is halted or not. Unavailable/nonexistent harts are not considered to be halted.

This register might not be present if fewer than 32769 harts are connected to this DM.

The LSB reflects the halt status of harts 20'h0 through 20'h7fff. The MSB reflects the halt status of harts 20'hf8000 through 20'hfffff.

This entire register is read-only.



#### 3.15.22 System Bus Access Control and Status (sbcs, at 0x38)

|   |            | 31 | 29                    | 28   | 23           |          | 22        |         | 21   |         |        | 20    |       |
|---|------------|----|-----------------------|------|--------------|----------|-----------|---------|------|---------|--------|-------|-------|
|   | sbversion  |    | (                     | )    | sbb          | usyerror | sb        | busy    | sk   | reac    | donado | dr    |       |
|   |            | 3  |                       | (    | 5            |          | 1         |         | 1    |         |        | 1     |       |
|   | 19         | 17 |                       |      | 16           |          | 15        | 5       |      | 14      | 12     | 11    | 5     |
|   | sbaccess   |    | ccess sbautoincrement |      | sbreadondata |          | ata       | sberror |      | sbasize |        |       |       |
|   | 3          |    | 1                     |      |              | 1        |           |         | 3    |         |        | 7     |       |
|   |            | 4  |                       |      | 3            |          | 2         |         |      | 1       |        | (     | )     |
|   | sbaccess12 |    | 128                   | sbac | ccess6       | 54       | sbaccess3 | 32      | sbac | cess    | 16     | sbaco | cess8 |
| 1 |            |    |                       | 1    |              | 1        |           |         | 1    |         | 1      |       |       |

| Field       | Description  | Access | Reset |
|-------------|--|--------|-------|
| sbversion   | 0 (legacy): The System Bus interface conforms to     | R      | 1     |
|             | mainline drafts of this spec older than 1 January,   |        |       |
|             | 2018.  |        |       |
|             | 1 (1.0): The System Bus interface conforms to        |        |       |
|             | this version of the spec.                            |        |       |
|             | Other values are reserved for future versions.       |        |       |
| sbbusyerror | Set when the debugger attempts to read data          | R/W1C  | 0     |
|             | while a read is in progress, or when the debug-      |        |       |
|             | ger initiates a new access while one is already in   |        |       |
|             | progress (while sbbusy is set). It remains set until |        |       |
|             | it's explicitly cleared by the debugger.             |        |       |
|             | While this field is set, no more system bus accesses |        |       |
|             | can be initiated by the Debug Module.                |        |       |

| Field           | Description   | Access  | Reset  |
|-----------------|---|---------|--------|
| sbbusy          | When 1, indicates the system bus master is busy.                    | R       | 0      |
|                 | (Whether the system bus itself is busy is related,                  |         |        |
|                 | but not the same thing.) This bit goes high im-                     |         |        |
|                 | mediately when a read or write is requested for                     |         |        |
|                 | any reason, and does not go low until the access                    |         |        |
|                 | is fully completed.   |         |        |
|                 | Writes to sbcs while sbbusy is high result in un-                   |         |        |
|                 | defined behavior. A debugger must not write to                      |         |        |
|                 | sbcs until it reads sbbusy as 0.                                    |         |        |
| sbreadonaddr    | When 1, every write to sbaddress0 automatically                     | R/W     | 0      |
| Sorcadoridadi   | triggers a system bus read at the new address.                      | 10/ 11  |        |
| sbaccess        | Select the access size to use for system bus ac-                    | R/W     | 2      |
| 35466633        | cesses.   | 10/ 11  | _      |
|                 | 0 (8bit): 8-bit   |         |        |
|                 | 1 (16bit): 16-bit   |         |        |
|                 | 2 (32bit): 32-bit   |         |        |
|                 | 3 (64bit): 64-bit   |         |        |
|                 | 4 (128bit): 128-bit   |         |        |
|                 | If sbaccess has an unsupported value when the                       |         |        |
|                 | DM starts a bus access, the access is not per-                      |         |        |
|                 | formed and sberror is set to 4.                                     |         |        |
| sbautoincrement | When 1, sbaddress is incremented by the access                      | R/W     | 0      |
| Spautomerenent  | _ ·   | 11/ 11/ | U      |
|                 | size (in bytes) selected in sbaccess after every system bus access. |         |        |
| -h              |   | D/W     | 0      |
| sbreadondata    | When 1, every read from sbdata0 automatically                       | R/W     | 0      |
|                 | triggers a system bus read at the (possibly auto-                   |         |        |
| -1              | incremented) address.   | D /W10  | 0      |
| sberror         | When the Debug Module's system bus master en-                       | R/W1C   | 0      |
|                 | counters an error, this field gets set. The bits in                 |         |        |
|                 | this field remain set until they are cleared by writ-               |         |        |
|                 | ing 1 to them. While this field is non-zero, no                     |         |        |
|                 | more system bus accesses can be initiated by the                    |         |        |
|                 | Debug Module.   |         |        |
|                 | An implementation may report "Other" (7) for                        |         |        |
|                 | any error condition.  |         |        |
|                 | 0 (none): There was no bus error.                                   |         |        |
|                 | 1 (timeout): There was a timeout.                                   |         |        |
|                 | 2 (address): A bad address was accessed.                            |         |        |
|                 | 3 (alignment): There was an alignment error.                        |         |        |
|                 | 4 (size): An access of unsupported size was re-                     |         |        |
|                 | quested.  |         |        |
|                 | 7 (other): Other.   |         |        |
| sbasize         | Width of system bus addresses in bits. (0 indi-                     | R       | Preset |
|                 | cates there is no bus access support.)                              |         |        |
| sbaccess128     | 1 when 128-bit system bus accesses are supported.                   | R       | Preset |

| Field      | Description                                      | Access | Reset  |
|------------|--|--------|--------|
| sbaccess64 | 1 when 64-bit system bus accesses are supported. | R      | Preset |
| sbaccess32 | 1 when 32-bit system bus accesses are supported. | R      | Preset |
| sbaccess16 | 1 when 16-bit system bus accesses are supported. | R      | Preset |
| sbaccess8  | 1 when 8-bit system bus accesses are supported.  | R      | Preset |

#### 3.15.23 System Bus Address 31:0 (sbaddress0, at 0x39)

If sbasize is 0, then this register is not present.

When the system bus master is busy, writes to this register will set sbbusyerror and don't do anything else.

If sberror is 0, sbbusyerror is 0, and sbreadonaddr is set then writes to this register start the following:

- 1. Set sbbusy.
- 2. Perform a bus read from the new value of sbaddress.
- 3. If the read succeeded and shautoincrement is set, increment shaddress.
- 4. Clear sbbusy.



| Field   | Description                                   | Access | Reset |
|---------|---|--------|-------|
| address | Accesses bits 31:0 of the physical address in | R/W    | 0     |
|         | sbaddress.                                    |        |       |

#### 3.15.24 System Bus Address 63:32 (sbaddress1, at 0x3a)

If sbasize is less than 33, then this register is not present.

When the system bus master is busy, writes to this register will set sbbusyerror and don't do anything else.



| Field   | Description   | Access | Reset |
|---------|---|--------|-------|
| address | Accesses bits 63:32 of the physical address in      | R/W    | 0     |
|         | sbaddress (if the system address bus is that wide). |        |       |

#### 3.15.25 System Bus Address 95:64 (sbaddress2, at 0x3b)

If sbasize is less than 65, then this register is not present.

When the system bus master is busy, writes to this register will set sbbusyerror and don't do anything else.



| Field   | Description   | Access | Reset |
|---------|---|--------|-------|
| address | Accesses bits 95:64 of the physical address in      | R/W    | 0     |
|         | sbaddress (if the system address bus is that wide). |        |       |

#### 3.15.26 System Bus Address 127:96 (sbaddress3, at 0x37)

If sbasize is less than 97, then this register is not present.

When the system bus master is busy, writes to this register will set sbbusyerror and don't do anything else.



| Field   | Description   | Access | Reset |
|---------|---|--------|-------|
| address | Accesses bits 127:96 of the physical address in     | R/W    | 0     |
|         | sbaddress (if the system address bus is that wide). |        |       |

#### 3.15.27 System Bus Data 31:0 (sbdata0, at 0x3c)

If all of the sbaccess bits in sbcs are 0, then this register is not present.

Any successful system bus read updates sbdata. If the width of the read access is less than the width of sbdata, the contents of the remaining high bits may take on any value.

If either sberror or sbbusyerror isn't 0 then accesses do nothing.

If the bus master is busy then accesses set sbbusyerror, and don't do anything else.

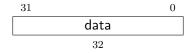
Writes to this register start the following:

- 1. Set sbbusy.
- 2. Perform a bus write of the new value of sbdata to sbaddress.
- 3. If the write succeeded and sbautoincrement is set, increment sbaddress.
- 4. Clear sbbusy.

Reads from this register start the following:

- 1. "Return" the data.
- 2. Set sbbusy.
- 3. If sbreadondata is set:
  - (a) Perform a system bus read from the address contained in sbaddress, placing the result in sbdata.
  - (b) If sbautoincrement is set and the read was successful, increment sbaddress.
- 4. Clear sbbusy.

Only sbdata0 has this behavior. The other sbdata registers have no side effects. On systems that have buses wider than 32 bits, a debugger should access sbdata0 after accessing the other sbdata registers.

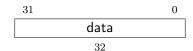


| Field | Description                   | Access | Reset |
|-------|-------------------------------|--------|-------|
| data  | Accesses bits 31:0 of sbdata. | R/W    | 0     |

#### 3.15.28 System Bus Data 63:32 (sbdata1, at 0x3d)

If sbaccess64 and sbaccess128 are 0, then this register is not present.

If the bus master is busy then accesses set sbbusyerror, and don't do anything else.



| Field | Description                                      | Access | Reset |
|-------|--|--------|-------|
| data  | Accesses bits 63:32 of sbdata (if the system bus | R/W    | 0     |
|       | is that wide).                                   |        |       |

#### 3.15.29 System Bus Data 95:64 (sbdata2, at 0x3e)

This register only exists if sbaccess128 is 1.

If the bus master is busy then accesses set sbbusyerror, and don't do anything else.

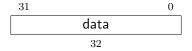


| Field | Description                                      | Access | Reset |
|-------|--|--------|-------|
| data  | Accesses bits 95:64 of sbdata (if the system bus | R/W    | 0     |
|       | is that wide).                                   |        |       |

#### 3.15.30 System Bus Data 127:96 (sbdata3, at 0x3f)

This register only exists if sbaccess128 is 1.

If the bus master is busy then accesses set sbbusyerror, and don't do anything else.



| Field | Description                                       | Access | Reset |
|-------|---|--------|-------|
| data  | Accesses bits 127:96 of sbdata (if the system bus | R/W    | 0     |
|       | is that wide).                                    |        |       |

#### 3.15.31 Custom Features (custom, at 0x1f)

This optional register may be used for non-standard features. Future version of the debug spec will not use this address.

#### 3.15.32 Custom Features 0 (custom0, at 0x70)

The optional custom0 through custom15 registers may be used for non-standard features. Future versions of the debug spec will not use these addresses.

# Chapter 4

# Sdext ISA Extension

This chapter describes the Sdext ISA extension. It must be implemented to make external debug work, and is only useful in conjunction with external debug.

Modifications to the RISC-V core to support debug are kept to a minimum. There is a special execution mode (Debug Mode) and a few extra CSRs. The DM takes care of the rest.

In order to be compatible with this specification an implementation must implement everything described in this section that is not explicitly listed as optional.

### 4.1 Debug Mode

Debug Mode is a special processor mode used only when a hart is halted for external debugging. Because the hart is halted, there is no forward progress in the normal instruction stream. How Debug Mode is implemented is not specified here.

When executing code due to an abstract command, the hart stays in Debug Mode and the following apply:

- 1. All operations are executed with machine mode privilege, except that MPRV in mstatus may be ignored according to mprven. Full permission checks, or a relaxed set of permission checks, will apply according to relaxed priv.
- 2. All interrupts (including NMI) are masked.
- 3. Exceptions don't update any registers. That includes cause, epc, tval, dpc, and mstatus. They do end execution of the Program Buffer.
- 4. No action is taken if a trigger matches.
- 5. If stopcount is 0 then counters continue. If it is 1 then counters are stopped.
- 6. If stoptime is 0 then time continues to update. If it is 1 then time will not update. It will resynchronize with mtime after leaving Debug Mode.
- 7. The wfi instruction acts as a nop.
- 8. Almost all instructions that change the privilege mode have UNSPECIFIED behavior. This includes ecall, mret, sret, and uret. (To change the privilege mode, the debugger can

write prv and v in dcsr). The only exception is ebreak, which ends execution of the Program Buffer when executed.

- 9. All control transfer instructions may act as illegal instructions if their destination is in the Program Buffer. If one such instruction acts as an illegal instruction, all such instructions must act as illegal instructions.
- 10. All control transfer instructions may act as illegal instructions if their destination is outside the Program Buffer. If one such instruction acts as an illegal instruction, all such instructions must act as illegal instructions.
- 11. Instructions that depend on the value of the PC (e.g. auipc) may act as illegal instructions.
- 12. Effective XLEN is DXLEN.
- 13. Forward progress is guaranteed.

When mprven =1, the external debugger can set MPRV and MPP appropriately to have hardware perform memory accesses with the appropriate endianness, address translation, permission checks, and PMP/PMA checks (subject to relaxed priv). This is also the only way to access all of physical memory when 34-bit physical addresses are supported on a Sv32 hart. If hardware ties mprven to 0 then the external debugger is expected to simulate all the effects of MPRV, including any extensions that affect memory accesses. For these reasons it is recommended to tie mprven to 1.

### 4.2 Load-Reserved/Store-Conditional Instructions

The reservation registered by an lr instruction on a memory address may be lost when entering Debug Mode or while in Debug Mode. This means that there may be no forward progress if Debug Mode is entered between lr and sc pairs.

This is a behavior that debug users must be aware of. If they have a breakpoint set between a lr and sc pair, or are stepping through such code, the sc may never succeed. Fortunately in general use there will be very few instructions in such a sequence, and anybody debugging it will quickly notice that the reservation is not occurring. The solution in that case is to set a breakpoint on the first instruction after the sc and run to it. A higher level debugger may choose to automate this.

### 4.3 Wait for Interrupt Instruction

If halt is requested while wfi is executing, then the hart must leave the stalled state, completing this instruction's execution, and then enter Debug Mode.

### 4.4 Single Step

#### 4.4.1 Step Bit In Dcsr

This method is only available to external debuggers, and is the preferred way to single step.

An external debugger can cause a halted hart to execute a single instruction or trap and then re-enter Debug Mode by setting step before resuming. If step is set when a hart resumes then it will single step, regardless of the reason for resuming.

If control is transferred to a trap handler while executing the instruction, then Debug Mode is re-entered immediately after the PC is changed to the trap handler, and the appropriate tval and cause registers are updated. In this case none of the trap handler is executed, and if the cause was a pending interrupt no instructions might be executed at all.

If executing or fetching the instruction causes a trigger to fire with action=1, Debug Mode is reentered immediately after that trigger has fired. In that case cause is set to 2 (trigger) instead of 4 (single step). Whether the instruction is executed or not depends on the specific configuration of the trigger.

If the instruction that is executed causes the PC to change to an address where an instruction fetch causes an exception, that exception does not occur until the next time the hart is resumed. Similarly, a trigger at the new address does not fire until the hart actually attempts to execute that instruction.

If the instruction being stepped over is wfi and would normally stall the hart, then instead the instruction is treated as nop.

#### 4.4.2 Icount Trigger

Native debuggers won't have access to dcsr, but can use the icount trigger by setting count to 1.

This approach does have some limitations:

- 1. Interrupts will fire as usual. Debuggers that want to disable interrupts while stepping must disable them by changing mstatus, and specially handle instructions that read mstatus.
- 2. wfi instructions are not treated specially and might take a very long time to complete.

This mechanism cleanly supports a system which supports multiple privilege levels, where the OS or a debug stub runs in M-Mode while the program being debugged runs in a less privileged mode. Systems that only support M-Mode can use icount as well, but count must be able to count several instructions (depending on the software implementation). See Section B.3.1.

#### 4.5 Reset

If the halt signal (driven by the hart's halt request bit in the Debug Module) or resethaltreq are asserted when a hart comes out of reset, the hart must enter Debug Mode before executing any instructions, but after performing any initialization that would usually happen before the first instruction is executed.

#### 4.6 Resume

When a hart resumes:

- 1. pc changes to the value stored in dpc.
- 2. The current privilege mode and virtualization mode are changed to that specified by prv and v.
- 3. If the new privilege mode is less privileged than M-mode, MPRV in mstatus is cleared.
- 4. The hart is no longer in debug mode.

#### 4.7 XLEN

While in Debug Mode, XLEN is DXLEN. It is up to the debugger to determine the XLEN during normal program execution (by looking at misa) and to clearly communicate this to the user.

### 4.8 Core Debug Registers

The supported Core Debug Registers must be implemented for each hart that can be debugged. They are CSRs, accessible using the RISC-V csr opcodes and optionally also using abstract debug commands.

These registers are only accessible from Debug Mode.

Table 4.1: Core Debug Registers

| Address | Name                                 | Page |
|---------|--------------------------------------|------|
| 0x7b0   | Debug Control and Status (dcsr)      | 53   |
| 0x7b1   | Debug PC (dpc)                       | 57   |
| 0x7b2   | Debug Scratch Register 0 (dscratch0) | 58   |
| 0x7b3   | Debug Scratch Register 1 (dscratch1) | 58   |

### 4.8.1 Debug Control and Status (dcsr, at 0x7b0)

Upon entry into Debug Mode, v and prv are updated with the privilege level the hart was previously in, and cause is updated with the reason for Debug Mode entry. Other than these fields and nmip, the other fields of dcsr are only writable by the external debugger.

Table 4.2 shows the priorities of reasons for entering Debug Mode. Implementations should implement priorities as shown in the table. For compatibility with old versions of this spec, resethaltreq and haltreq are allowed to be at different positions than shown as long as:

1. resethaltreq is higher priority than haltreq

2. the relative order of the other four causes is maintained

| 3, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, |   |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|--|
| cause encoding                            | Cause   |  |  |  |
| 5   | resethaltreq                                  |  |  |  |
| 6   | halt group                                    |  |  |  |
| 3   | haltreq                                       |  |  |  |
| 2   | trigger (See table 5.2 for detailed priority) |  |  |  |
| 1   | ebreak  |  |  |  |
| 4   | step  |  |  |  |

Table 4.2: Priority of reasons for entering Debug Mode from highest to lowest.

Note that mcontrol/mcontrol6 triggers with timing=after are considered to be high priority causes on the subsequent instruction. Therefore, an execute trigger with timing=after on an ebreak instruction is lower priority than the ebreak itself because the trigger will fire after the ebreak instruction. For the same reason, if a single instruction is stepped with both icount and step then the step has priority. See table 5.2 for the relative priorities of triggers with respect to the ebreak instruction.

Most multi-hart implementations will probably hardwire stoptime to 0, as the implementation can get complicated and the benefit is small.

This CSR is read/write.

| 31 28    | 27 18     | 17       | 16      |    | 15      | 14 | 13      | 12      | 11       |
|----------|-----------|----------|---------|----|---------|----|---------|---------|----------|
| debugver | 0         | ebreakvs | ebreakv | ′u | ebreakm | 0  | ebreaks | ebreakı | ı stepie |
| 4        | 10        | 1        | 1       |    | 1       | 1  | 1       | 1       | 1        |
|          | 10        | 9        | 8 6     | 5  | 4       | 3  | 2       | 1 0     |          |
|          | stopcount | stoptime | cause   | ٧  | mprven  | nm | ip step | prv     |          |
|          | 1         | 1        | 3       | 1  | 1       | 1  | 1       | 2       |          |

| Field    | Description   | Access | Reset  |
|----------|---|--------|--------|
| debugver | 0 (none): There is no debug support.                | R      | Preset |
|          | 4 (1.0): Debug support exists as it is described in |        |        |
|          | this document.                                      |        |        |
|          | 15 (custom): There is debug support, but it does    |        |        |
|          | not conform to any available version of this spec.  |        |        |
| ebreakvs | 0 (exception): ebreak instructions in VS-mode       | WARL   | 0      |
|          | behave as described in the Privileged Spec.         |        |        |
|          | 1 (debug mode): ebreak instructions in VS-mode      |        |        |
|          | enter Debug Mode.                                   |        |        |
|          | This bit is hardwired to 0 if the hart does not     |        |        |
|          | support virtualization mode.                        |        |        |

| Field     | Description  | Access | Reset  |
|-----------|--|--------|--------|
| ebreakvu  | 0 (exception): ebreak instructions in VU-mode behave as described in the Privileged Spec. 1 (debug mode): ebreak instructions in VU-mode | WARL   | 0      |
|           | enter Debug Mode.  |        |        |
|           | This bit is hardwired to 0 if the hart does not  |        |        |
|           | support virtualization mode.   |        |        |
| ebreakm   | 0 (exception): ebreak instructions in M-mode be-   | R/W    | 0      |
|           | have as described in the Privileged Spec.  |        |        |
|           | 1 (debug mode): ebreak instructions in M-mode  |        |        |
| ebreaks   | enter Debug Mode.  | WARL   | 0      |
| ebreaks   | 0 (exception): <b>ebreak</b> instructions in S-mode behave as described in the Privileged Spec.  | WARL   | 0      |
|           | 1 (debug mode): ebreak instructions in S-mode  |        |        |
|           | enter Debug Mode.  |        |        |
|           | This bit is hardwired to 0 if the hart does not  |        |        |
|           | support S-mode.  |        |        |
| ebreaku   | 0 (exception): ebreak instructions in U-mode be-   | WARL   | 0      |
|           | have as described in the Privileged Spec.  |        |        |
|           | 1 (debug mode): ebreak instructions in U-mode  |        |        |
|           | enter Debug Mode.  |        |        |
|           | This bit is hardwired to 0 if the hart does not  |        |        |
| stepie    | support U-mode.  0 (interrupts disabled): Interrupts (including  | WARL   | 0      |
| steple    | NMI) are disabled during single stepping.  | WAILL  | U      |
|           | 1 (interrupts enabled): Interrupts (including  |        |        |
|           | NMI) are enabled during single stepping.   |        |        |
|           | Implementations may hard wire this bit to 0. In  |        |        |
|           | that case interrupt behavior can be emulated by  |        |        |
|           | the debugger.  |        |        |
|           | The debugger must not change the value of this   |        |        |
|           | bit while the hart is running.   |        |        |
| stopcount | 0 (normal): Increment counters as usual.   | WARL   | Preset |
|           | 1 (freeze): Don't increment any hart-local countary while in Dobug Mode or on chroak instruc-  |        |        |
|           | ters while in Debug Mode or on ebreak instruc-<br>tions that cause entry into Debug Mode. These  |        |        |
|           | counters include the instret CSR. On single-hart   |        |        |
|           | cores cycle should be stopped, but on multi-hart   |        |        |
|           | cores it must keep incrementing.   |        |        |
|           | An implementation may hardwire this bit to 0 or  |        |        |
|           | 1.   |        |        |

| Field    | Description  | Access | Reset  |
|----------|--|--------|--------|
| stoptime | 0 (normal): time continues to reflect mtime.  1 (freeze): time is frozen at the time that Debug Mode was entered. When leaving Debug Mode, time will reflect the latest value of mtime again. While all harts have stoptime =1 and are in Debug Mode, mtime is allowed to stop incrementing. An implementation may hardwire this bit to 0 or 1.  | WARL   | Preset |
| cause    | Explains why Debug Mode was entered.  When there are multiple reasons to enter Debug Mode in a single cycle, hardware should set cause to the cause with the highest priority. See ta- ble 4.2 for priorities.  1 (ebreak): An ebreak instruction was executed. 2 (trigger): A Trigger Module trigger fired with action=1. 3 (haltreq): The debugger requested entry to De- bug Mode using haltreq. 4 (step): The hart single stepped because step was set. 5 (resethaltreq): The hart halted directly out of reset due to resethaltreq. It is also acceptable to report 3 when this happens. 6 (group): The hart halted because it's part of a halt group. Harts may report 3 for this cause instead. Other values are reserved for future use. | R      | 0      |
| V        | Extends the prv field with the virtualization mode the hart was operating in when Debug Mode was entered. The encoding is described in Table 4.6. A debugger can change this value to change the hart's virtualization mode when exiting Debug Mode. This bit is hardwired to 0 on harts that do not support virtualization mode.  | WARL   | 0      |
| mprven   | 0 (disabled): MPRV in mstatus is ignored in Debug Mode. 1 (enabled): MPRV in mstatus takes effect in Debug Mode. Implementing this bit is optional. It may be tied to either 0 or 1.   | WARL   | Preset |

| Field | Description   | Access | Reset |
|-------|---|--------|-------|
| nmip  | When set, there is a Non-Maskable-Interrupt         | R      | 0     |
|       | (NMI) pending for the hart.                         |        |       |
|       | Since an NMI can indicate a hardware error condi-   |        |       |
|       | tion, reliable debugging may no longer be possible  |        |       |
|       | once this bit becomes set. This is implementation-  |        |       |
|       | dependent.  |        |       |
| step  | When set and not in Debug Mode, the hart will       | R/W    | 0     |
|       | only execute a single instruction and then enter    |        |       |
|       | Debug Mode. See Section 4.4.1 for details.          |        |       |
|       | The debugger must not change the value of this      |        |       |
|       | bit while the hart is running.                      |        |       |
| prv   | Contains the privilege mode the hart was operat-    | WARL   | 3     |
|       | ing in when Debug Mode was entered. The en-         |        |       |
|       | coding is described in Table 4.6. A debugger can    |        |       |
|       | change this value to change the hart's privilege    |        |       |
|       | mode when exiting Debug Mode.                       |        |       |
|       | Not all privilege modes are supported on all harts. |        |       |
|       | If the encoding written is not supported or the     |        |       |
|       | debugger is not allowed to change to it, the hart   |        |       |
|       | may change to any supported privilege mode.         |        |       |

### 4.8.2 Debug PC (dpc, at 0x7b1)

Upon entry to debug mode, dpc is updated with the virtual address of the next instruction to be executed. The behavior is described in more detail in Table 4.4.

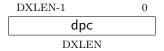
Table 4.4: Virtual address in DPC upon Debug Mode Entry

| Cause          | Virtual Address in DPC                                |
|----------------|---|
| ebreak         | Address of the ebreak instruction                     |
| single step    | Address of the instruction that would be executed     |
|                | next if no debugging was going on. Ie. $pc + 4$ for   |
|                | 32-bit instructions that don't change program flow,   |
|                | the destination PC on taken jumps/branches, etc.      |
| trigger module | The address of the next instruction to be executed at |
|                | the time that debug mode was entered. If the trigger  |
|                | is mcontrol or mcontrol6 and timing is 0, this        |
|                | corresponds to the address of the instruction which   |
|                | caused the trigger to fire.                           |
| halt request   | Address of the next instruction to be executed at the |
|                | time that debug mode was entered                      |

The writability of dpc follows the same rules as mepc as defined in the Privileged Spec. In particular, dpc must be able to hold all valid virtual addresses and the writability of the low bits depends on IALIGN.

When resuming, the hart's PC is updated to the virtual address stored in dpc. A debugger may write dpc to change where the hart resumes.

This CSR is read/write.



#### 4.8.3 Debug Scratch Register 0 (dscratch0, at 0x7b2)

Optional scratch register that can be used by implementations that need it. A debugger must not write to this register unless hartinfo explicitly mentions it (the Debug Module may use this register internally).

#### 4.8.4 Debug Scratch Register 1 (dscratch1, at 0x7b3)

Optional scratch register that can be used by implementations that need it. A debugger must not write to this register unless hartinfo explicitly mentions it (the Debug Module may use this register internally).

### 4.9 Virtual Debug Registers

A virtual register is one that doesn't exist directly in the hardware, but that the debugger exposes as if it does. Debug software should implement them, but hardware can skip this section. Virtual registers exist to give users access to functionality that's not part of standard debuggers without requiring them to carefully modify debug registers while the debugger is also accessing those same registers.

Table 4.5: Virtual Core Debug Registers

| Address | Name                  | Page |
|---------|-----------------------|------|
| virtual | Privilege Mode (priv) | 58   |

### 4.9.1 Privilege Mode (priv, at virtual)

Users can read this register to inspect the privilege mode that the hart was running in when the hart halted. Users can write this register to change the privilege mode that the hart will run in when it resumes.

This register contains prv and v from dcsr, but in a place that the user is expected to access. The user should not access dcsr directly, because doing so might interfere with the debugger.

H extension prv Abbreviation Name supported 0 No 0 U-mode User mode No 0 1 S-mode Supervisor mode No 0 3 M-mode Machine mode Yes 0 0 U-mode User mode HS-mode Hypervisor-enabled supervisor mode Yes 0 1 Yes 3 M-mode Machine mode 0 Yes 0 VU-mode Virtual user mode 1 VS-mode Virtual supervisor mode Yes 1 1

Table 4.6: Privilege Mode and Virtualization Mode Encoding

| 2 | 1  | 0  |
|---|----|----|
| ٧ | рі | ٢V |
| 1 | 2  |    |

| Field | Description                                       | Access | Reset |
|-------|---|--------|-------|
| V     | Contains the virtualization mode the hart was op- | WARL   | 0     |
|       | erating in when Debug Mode was entered. The       |        |       |
|       | encoding is described in Table 4.6, and matches   |        |       |
|       | the virtualization mode encoding from the Privi-  |        |       |
|       | leged Spec. A user can write this value to change |        |       |
|       | the hart's virtualization mode when exiting De-   |        |       |
|       | bug Mode.   |        |       |
| prv   | Contains the privilege mode the hart was operat-  | R/W    | 0     |
|       | ing in when Debug Mode was entered. The en-       |        |       |
|       | coding is described in Table 4.6, and matches the |        |       |
|       | privilege mode encoding from the Privileged Spec. |        |       |
|       | A user can write this value to change the hart's  |        |       |
|       | privilege mode when exiting Debug Mode.           |        |       |

# Chapter 5

# **Sdtrig ISA Extension**

This chapter describes the Sdtrig ISA extension, which can be implemented independently of functionality described in the other chapters. It consists exclusively of the Trigger Module (TM).

Triggers can cause a breakpoint exception, entry into Debug Mode, or a trace action without having to execute a special instruction. This makes them invaluable when debugging code from ROM. They can trigger on execution of instructions at a given memory address, or on the address/data in loads/stores.

A hart can be compatible with this specification without implementing any trigger functionality at all, but if it is implemented then it must conform to this section. If triggers aren't implemented, the CSRs might not exist at all and accessing them results in an illegal instruction exception.

Triggers do not fire while in Debug Mode.

#### 5.1 Enumeration

Each trigger may support a variety of features. A debugger can build a list of all triggers and their features as follows:

- 1. Write 0 to tselect. If this results in an illegal instruction exception, then there are no triggers implemented.
- 2. Read back tselect and check that it contains the written value. If not, exit the loop.
- 3. Read tinfo.
- 4. If that caused an exception, the debugger must read tdata1 to discover the type. (If type is 0, this trigger doesn't exist. Exit the loop.)
- 5. If info is 1, this trigger doesn't exist. Exit the loop.
- 6. Otherwise, the selected trigger supports the types discovered in info.
- 7. Repeat, incrementing the value in tselect.

The above algorithm reads back tselect so that implementations which have  $2^n$  triggers only need to implement n bits of tselect.

The algorithm checks tinfo and type in case the implementation has m bits of tselect but fewer than  $2^m$  triggers.

#### 5.2 Actions

Triggers can be configured to take one of several actions when they fire. Table 5.1 lists all options.

Table 5.1: action encoding

| Table 5.1. action encoding |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|----------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Value                      | Description   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0                          | Raise a breakpoint exception. (Used when software       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | wants to use the trigger module without an external     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | debugger attached.) xepc must contain the virtual       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | address of the next instruction that must be executed   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | to preserve the program flow.                           |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 1                          | Enter Debug Mode. dpc must contain the virtual          |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | address of the next instruction that must be executed   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | to preserve the program flow.                           |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | This action is only legal when the trigger's dmode is   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | 1. Since the tdata registers are WARL, hardware         |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | should clear the action field whenever the action field |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | is 1, the new value of dmode would be 0, and the new    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | value of the action field would be 1.                   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 2                          | Trace on, described in the trace specification.         |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 3                          | Trace off, described in the trace specification.        |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 4                          | Trace notify, described in the trace specification.     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 5                          | Reserved for use by the trace specification.            |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 8 - 9                      | Signal the firing of the trigger to other blocks within |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | the hart (e.g. as countable events to hpmcounters).     |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | Use external debug trigger output 0 or 1                |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                            | (respectively).   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| other                      | Reserved for future use.                                |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

# 5.3 Priority

Table 5.2 lists the synchronous exceptions from the Privileged Spec, and where the various types of triggers fit in. The first 3 columns come from the Privileged Spec, and the final column shows where triggers fit in. Priorities in the table are separated by horizontal lines, so e.g. etrigger and itrigger have the same priority. If this table contradicts the table in the Privileged Spec, then the latter takes precedence.

This table only applies if triggers are precise. Otherwise triggers will fire some indeterminate time after the event, and the priority is irrelevant. When triggers are chained, the priority is the lowest priority of the triggers in the chain.

| Priority | Exception | Description                       | Trigger                                      |
|----------|-----------|-----------------------------------|--|
|          | Code      |                                   |  |
| Highest  | 3         |                                   | etrigger                                     |
|          | 3         |                                   | icount                                       |
|          | 3         |                                   | itrigger                                     |
|          | 3         |                                   | mcontrol/mcontrol6 after                     |
|          |           |                                   | (on previous instruction)                    |
|          | 3         | Instruction address breakpoint    | mcontrol/mcontrol6 execute address before    |
|          | 12        | Instruction page fault            |  |
|          | 1         | Instruction access fault          |  |
|          | 3         |                                   | mcontrol/mcontrol6 execute data before       |
|          | 2         | Illegal instruction               |  |
|          | 0         | Instruction address misaligned    |  |
|          | 8, 9, 11  | Environment call                  |  |
|          | 3         | Environment break                 |  |
|          | 3         | Load/Store/AMO address breakpoint | mcontrol/mcontrol6 load/store address before |
|          | 3         |                                   | mcontrol/mcontrol6 store data before         |
|          | 6         | Store/AMO address misaligned      |  |
|          | 4         | Load address misaligned           |  |
|          | 15        | Store/AMO page fault              |  |
|          | 13        | Load page fault                   |  |
|          | 7         | Store/AMO access fault            |  |
|          | 5         | Load access fault                 |  |
| Lowest   | 3         |                                   | mcontrol/mcontrol6 load data before          |

Table 5.2: Synchronous exception priority in decreasing priority order.

When multiple triggers in the same priority fire at once, hit (if implemented) is set for all of them. If more than one of these triggers has action =0 then tval is updated in accordance with one of them, but which one is UNSPECIFIED. If one of these triggers has the "enter Debug Mode" action (1) and another trigger has the "raise a breakpoint exception" action (0), the preferred behavior is to have both actions take place. It is implementation-dependent which of the two happens first. This ensures both that the presence of an external debugger doesn't affect execution and that a trigger set by user code doesn't affect the external debugger. If this is not implemented, then the hart must enter Debug Mode and ignore the breakpoint exception. In the latter case, hit of the trigger whose action is 0 must still be set, giving a debugger an opportunity to handle this case. What happens with trace actions when triggers with different actions are also firing is left to the trace specification.

# 5.4 Native Triggers

Triggers can be used for native debugging when action = 0. If supported by the hart and desired by the debugger, triggers will often be programmed to have m = 0 so that when they fire they cause a breakpoint exception to trap to a more privileged mode. That breakpoint exception can either be taken in M-mode or it can be delegated to a less privileged mode. However, it is possible for

triggers to fire in the same mode that the resulting exception will be handled in.

In these cases such a trigger may cause a breakpoint exception while already in a trap handler. This might leave the hart unable to resume normal execution because state such as mcause and mepc would be overwritten.

In particular, when action =0:

- 1.  $mcontrol\ and\ mcontrol6\ triggers\ with\ m=1\ can\ cause\ a\ breakpoint\ exception\ that\ is\ taken$  from M-mode to M-mode (regardless of delegation).
- 2.  $mcontrol\ and\ mcontrol6\ triggers\ with\ s=1\ can\ cause\ a\ breakpoint\ exception\ that\ is\ taken$  from S-mode to S-mode if medeleg [3]=1.
- 3.  $mcontrol6\ triggers\ with\ vs=1\ can\ cause\ a\ breakpoint\ exception\ that\ is\ taken\ from\ VS-mode\ to\ VS-mode\ if\ medeleg\ [3]=1\ and\ hedeleg\ [3]=1.$
- 4. icount triggers with m =1 can cause a breakpoint exception that is taken from M-mode to M-mode (regardless of delegation).
- 5. icount triggers with s = 1 can cause a breakpoint exception that is taken from S-mode to S-mode if medeleg [3]=1.
- 6. icount triggers with vs = 1 can cause a breakpoint exception that is taken from VS-mode to VS-mode if medeleg [3]=1 and medeleg [3]=1.
- 7. etrigger and itrigger triggers will always be taken from a trap handler before the first instruction of the handler. If etrigger/itrigger is set to trigger on exception/interrupt X and if X is delegated to mode Y then the trigger will cause a breakpoint exception that is taken from mode Y to mode Y unless breakpoint exceptions are delegated to a more privileged mode than Y.
- 8. tmexttrigger triggers are asynchronous and may occur in any mode and at any time.

Harts that support triggers with action =0 should implement one of the following two solutions to solve the problem of reentrancy:

- 1. The hardware prevents triggers with action =0 from matching while in M-mode and while MIE in mstatus is 0. If medeleg [3]=1 then it prevents triggers with action =0 from matching while in S-mode and while SIE in sstatus is 0. If medeleg [3]=1 and hedeleg [3]=1 then it prevents triggers with action =0 from matching while in VS-mode and while SIE in vsstatus is 0.
- 2. mte and mpte in tcontrol is implemented. medeleg [3] is hard-wired to 0.

The first option has the limitation that interrupts might be disabled at times when a user still might want triggers to fire. It has the benefit that breakpoints are not required to be handled in M-mode.

The second option has the benefit that it only disables triggers during the trap handler, though it requires specific software support for this debug feature in the M-mode trap handlers. It can only work if breakpoints are not delegated to less privileged modes and therefore targets primarily implementations without S-mode.

Because tcontrol is not accessible to S-mode, the second option can not be extended to accommodate delegation without adding additional S-mode and VS-mode CSRs.

Both options prevent etrigger and itrigger from having any effect on exceptions and interrupts that are handled in M-mode. They also prevent triggering during some initial portion of each handler. Debuggers should use other mechanisms to debug these cases, such as patching the handler or setting a breakpoint on the instruction after MIE is cleared.

#### 5.5 Trigger Registers

These registers are CSRs, accessible using the RISC-V csr opcodes and optionally also using abstract debug commands.

Almost all trigger functionality is optional. All tdata registers follow write-any-read-legal semantics. If a debugger writes an unsupported configuration, the register will read back a value that is supported (which may simply be a disabled trigger). This means that a debugger must always read back values it writes to tdata registers, unless it already knows already what is supported. Writes to one tdata register must not modify the contents of other tdata registers, nor the configuration of any trigger besides the one that is currently selected.

The combination of these rules means that a debugger cannot simply set a trigger by writing tdata1, then tdata2, etc. The current value of tdata2 might not be legal with the new value of tdata1. To help with this situation, it is guaranteed that writing 0 to tdata1 disables the trigger, and leaves it in a state where tdata2 and tdata3 can be written with any value that makes sense for any trigger type supported by this trigger.

As a result, a debugger can write any supported trigger as follows:

- 1. Write 0 to tdata1. (This will result in tdata1 containing a non-zero value, since the register is WARL.)
- 2. Write desired values to tdata2 and tdata3.
- 3. Write desired value to tdata1.

Code that restores CSR context of triggers that might be configured to fire in the current privilege mode must use this same sequence to restore the triggers. This avoids the problem of a partially written trigger firing at a different time than is expected.

The trigger registers, except mscontext, scontext, and hcontext, are only accessible in machine and Debug Mode to prevent untrusted user code from causing entry into Debug Mode without the OS's permission.

In this section XLEN means MXLEN when in M-mode, and DXLEN when in Debug Mode. On systems where those values of XLEN can differ, this is handled as follows. Fields retain their values regardless of XLEN, which only affects where in the register these fields appear (e.g. type). Some fields are wider when XLEN is 64 than when it is 32 (e.g. svalue). The high bits in such fields retain their value but are not readable when XLEN is 32. A modification of a register when XLEN is 32 clears any inaccessible bits in that register.

Table 5.3: Trigger Registers

| Address | Name                          | Page |
|---------|-------------------------------|------|
| 0x5a8   | Supervisor Context (scontext) | 69   |
| 0x6a8   | Hypervisor Context (hcontext) | 69   |
| 0x7a0   | Trigger Select (tselect)      | 65   |
| 0x7a1   | Trigger Data 1 (tdata1)       | 65   |
| 0x7a1   | Match Control (mcontrol)      | 70   |

Name Address Page Match Control Type 6 (mcontrol6) 0x7a177 0x7a1Instruction Count (icount) 84 Interrupt Trigger (itrigger) 0x7a185 0x7a1Exception Trigger (etrigger) 87 External Trigger (tmexttrigger) 88 0x7a10x7a2Trigger Data 2 (tdata2) 67 0x7a3Trigger Data 3 (tdata3) 67 0x7a3Trigger Extra (RV32) (textra32) 89 0x7a3Trigger Extra (RV64) (textra64) 90 0x7a4Trigger Info (tinfo) 68 0x7a5Trigger Control (tcontrol) 68 0x7a8Machine Context (mcontext) 70 Machine Supervisor Context (mscontext) 70 0x7aa

Table 5.3: Trigger Registers

#### 5.5.1 Trigger Select (tselect, at 0x7a0)

This register determines which trigger is accessible through the other trigger registers. It is optional if no triggers are implemented. The set of accessible triggers must start at 0, and be contiguous.

This register is **WARL**. Writes of values greater than or equal to the number of supported triggers may result in a different value in this register than what was written or may point to a trigger where type =0. To verify that what they wrote is a valid index, debuggers can read back the value and check that tselect holds what they wrote and read tdata1 to see that type is non-zero.

Since triggers can be used both by Debug Mode and M-mode, the external debugger must restore this register if it modifies it.

This CSR is read/write.



#### 5.5.2 Trigger Data 1 (tdata1, at 0x7a1)

This register is optional if no triggers are implemented.

Writing 0 to this register must result in a trigger that is disabled. If this trigger supports multiple types, then the hardware should disable it by changing type to 15.

| XLEN-1 | XLEN-4 | XLEN-5 | XLEN-6   | 0 |
|--------|--------|--------|----------|---|
| ty     | pe     | dmode  | data     |   |
|        | 1      | 1      | XLEN - 5 |   |

| Field | Description   | Access | Reset  |
|-------|---|--------|--------|
| type  | 0 (none): There is no trigger at this tselect.      | WARL   | Preset |
|       | 1 (legacy): The trigger is a legacy SiFive address  |        |        |
|       | match trigger. These should not be implemented      |        |        |
|       | and aren't further documented here.                 |        |        |
|       | 2 (mcontrol): The trigger is an address/data        |        |        |
|       | match trigger. The remaining bits in this register  |        |        |
|       | act as described in mcontrol.                       |        |        |
|       | 3 (icount): The trigger is an instruction count     |        |        |
|       | trigger. The remaining bits in this register act as |        |        |
|       | described in icount.                                |        |        |
|       | 4 (itrigger): The trigger is an interrupt trigger.  |        |        |
|       | The remaining bits in this register act as de-      |        |        |
|       | scribed in itrigger.                                |        |        |
|       | 5 (etrigger): The trigger is an exception trig-     |        |        |
|       | ger. The remaining bits in this register act as     |        |        |
|       | described in etrigger.                              |        |        |
|       | 6 (mcontrol6): The trigger is an address/data       |        |        |
|       | match trigger. The remaining bits in this regis-    |        |        |
|       | ter act as described in mcontrol6. This is similar  |        |        |
|       | to a type 2 trigger, but provides additional func-  |        |        |
|       | tionality and should be used instead of type 2 in   |        |        |
|       | newer implementations.                              |        |        |
|       | 7 (tmexttrigger): The trigger is a trigger source   |        |        |
|       | external to the TM. The remaining bits in this      |        |        |
|       | register act as described in tmexttrigger.          |        |        |
|       | 12–14 (custom): These trigger types are available   |        |        |
|       | for non-standard use.                               |        |        |
|       | 15 (disabled): This trigger is disabled. In this    |        |        |
|       | state, tdata2 and tdata3 can be written with        |        |        |
|       | any value that is supported for any of the types    |        |        |
|       | this trigger implements. The remaining bits in      |        |        |
|       | this register, except for dmode, are ignored.       |        |        |
|       | Other values are reserved for future use.           |        |        |

| Field | Description  | Access | Reset  |
|-------|--|--------|--------|
| dmode | If type is 0, then this bit is hard-wired to 0.      | WARL   | 0      |
|       | 0 (both): Both Debug and M-mode can write the        |        |        |
|       | tdata registers at the selected tselect.             |        |        |
|       | 1 (dmode): Only Debug Mode can write the             |        |        |
|       | tdata registers at the selected tselect. Writes      |        |        |
|       | from other modes are ignored.                        |        |        |
|       | This bit is only writable from Debug Mode. In        |        |        |
|       | ordinary use, external debuggers will always set     |        |        |
|       | this bit when configuring a trigger. When clearing   |        |        |
|       | this bit, debuggers should also set the action field |        |        |
|       | (whose location depends on type) to something        |        |        |
|       | other than 1.  |        |        |
| data  | If type is 0, then this field is hard-wired to 0.    | WARL   | Preset |
|       | Trigger-specific data.                               |        |        |

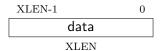
#### 5.5.3 Trigger Data 2 (tdata2, at 0x7a2)

Trigger-specific data. It is optional if no implemented triggers use it.

If the trigger is disabled, then this register can be written with any value supported by any of the trigger types supported by this trigger.

If XLEN is less than DXLEN, writes to this register are sign-extended.

This CSR is read/write.

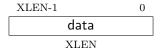


#### 5.5.4 Trigger Data 3 (tdata3, at 0x7a3)

Trigger-specific data. It is optional if no implemented triggers use it.

If the trigger is disabled, then this register can be written with any value supported by any of the trigger types supported by this trigger.

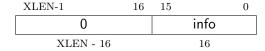
If XLEN is less than DXLEN, writes to this register are sign-extended.



#### 5.5.5 Trigger Info (tinfo, at 0x7a4)

This register is optional if no triggers are implemented, or if type is not writable. In this case the debugger can read the only supported type from tdata1.

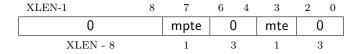
Writing this read/write CSR has no effect.



| Field | Description   | Access | Reset  |
|-------|---|--------|--------|
| info  | One bit for each possible type enumerated in          | R      | Preset |
|       | tdata1. Bit N corresponds to type N. If the bit is    |        |        |
|       | set, then that type is supported by the currently     |        |        |
|       | selected trigger.                                     |        |        |
|       | If the currently selected trigger doesn't exist, this |        |        |
|       | field contains 1.                                     |        |        |

### 5.5.6 Trigger Control (tcontrol, at 0x7a5)

This optional register is only accessible in M-mode and Debug Mode and provides various control bits related to triggers.



| Field | Description  | Access | Reset |
|-------|--|--------|-------|
| mpte  | M-mode previous trigger enable field.              | WARL   | 0     |
|       | mpte and mte provide one solution to a problem     |        |       |
|       | regarding triggers with action=0 firing in M-mode  |        |       |
|       | trap handlers. See Section 5.4 for more details.   |        |       |
|       | When a breakpoint trap into M-mode is taken,       |        |       |
|       | mpte is set to the value of mte.                   |        |       |
| mte   | M-mode trigger enable field.                       | WARL   | 0     |
|       | 0 (disabled): Triggers with action=0 do not        |        |       |
|       | match/fire while the hart is in M-mode.            |        |       |
|       | 1 (enabled): Triggers do match/fire while the hart |        |       |
|       | is in M-mode.                                      |        |       |
|       | When a breakpoint trap into M-mode is taken,       |        |       |
|       | mte is set to 0. When mret is executed, mte is set |        |       |
|       | to the value of mpte.                              |        |       |

#### 5.5.7 Hypervisor Context (hcontext, at 0x6a8)

This optional register is only accessible in S/HS-mode, M-mode and Debug Mode.

Accessibility of this CSR is controlled by mstateen0 [57] in the Smstateen extension.

If the H extension is not implemented then this register is not implemented, though the underlying state may be accessible via the optional mcontext alias.

This CSR is read/write.

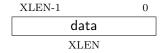


| Field    | Description  | Access | Reset |
|----------|--|--------|-------|
| hcontext | Hypervisor mode software can write a context       | WARL   | 0     |
|          | number to this register, which can be used to set  |        |       |
|          | triggers that only fire in that specific context.  |        |       |
|          | An implementation may tie any number of upper      |        |       |
|          | bits in this field to 0. If the H extension is not |        |       |
|          | implemented, it's recommended to implement no      |        |       |
|          | more than 6 bits on RV32 and 13 on RV64 (as vis-   |        |       |
|          | ible through the mcontext register). If the H ex-  |        |       |
|          | tension is implemented, it's recommended to im-    |        |       |
|          | plement no more than 7 bits on RV32 and 14 on      |        |       |
|          | RV64.  |        |       |

#### 5.5.8 Supervisor Context (scontext, at 0x5a8)

This optional register is only accessible in S/HS-mode, VS-mode, M-mode and Debug Mode.

Accessibility of this CSR is controlled by mstateen0 [57] and hstateen0 [57] in the Smstateen extension. Enabling scontext can be a security risk in a virtualized system with a hypervisor that does not swap scontext.



| Field | Description   | Access | Reset |
|-------|---|--------|-------|
| data  | Supervisor mode software can write a context        | WARL   | 0     |
|       | number to this register, which can be used to set   |        |       |
|       | triggers that only fire in that specific context.   |        |       |
|       | An implementation may tie any number of high        |        |       |
|       | bits in this field to 0. It's recommended to imple- |        |       |
|       | ment no more than 16 bits on RV32, and 34 on        |        |       |
|       | RV64.   |        |       |

#### 5.5.9 Machine Context (mcontext, at 0x7a8)

This optional register is an alias for hcontext and is only accessible in M-mode and Debug mode.

#### 5.5.10 Machine Supervisor Context (mscontext, at 0x7aa)

This optional register is an alias for scontext. It is only accessible in S/HS-mode, M-mode and Debug Mode. It is included for backward compatibility with version 0.13.

The encoding of this CSR does not conform to the CSR Address Mapping Convention in the Privileged Spec. It is expected that new implementations will not support this encoding and that new debuggers will not use this CSR if scontext is available.

#### 5.5.11 Match Control (mcontrol, at 0x7a1)

This register is accessible as tdata1 when type is 2. This trigger type is deprecated. It is included for backward compatibility with version 0.13.

This trigger type only supports a subset of features of the newer mcontrol6. It is expected that new implementations will not support this trigger type and that new debuggers will not use it if mcontrol6 is available.

Address and data trigger implementation are heavily dependent on how the processor core is implemented. To accommodate various implementations, execute, load, and store address/data triggers may fire at whatever point in time is most convenient for the implementation. The debugger may request specific timings as described in timing. Table 5.10 suggests timings for the best user experience.

A chain of triggers that don't all have the same timing value will never fire. That means to implement the suggestions in Table 5.10, both timings should be supported on load address triggers.

This trigger type may be limited to address comparisons (select is always 0) only. If that is the case and masking is not supported (match values 4, 5, 12, 13), then tdata2 must be able to hold all valid virtual addresses but it need not be capable of holding other values.

The Privileged Spec says that breakpoint exceptions that occur on instruction fetches, loads, or stores update the tval CSR with either zero or the faulting virtual address. The faulting virtual

address for an montrol trigger with action =0 is the address being accessed and which caused that trigger to fire. If multiple montrol triggers are chained then the faulting virtual address is the address which caused any of the chained triggers to fire.

If the A extension is supported, then trigger behavior is as follows for the load and store bits:

- 1. 1r instructions are loads
- 2. successful sc instructions are stores
- 3. it is unspecified whether failing sc instructions are stores or not
- 4. Each AMO instruction is a load for the read portion of the operation. The address is always available to trigger on, although the value loaded might not be, depending on the hardware implementation.
- 5. Each AMO instruction is a store for the write portion of the operation. The address is always available to trigger on, although the value stored might not be, depending on the hardware implementation.

If the destination register of any load or AMO is zero then it is UNSPECIFIED whether a load trigger with select =1 will match. Whether store triggers with select =1 match on AMOs is UNSPECIFIED.

If textra32 or textra64 are implemented for this trigger, it only matches when the conditions set there are satisfied.

This CSR is read/write.

| XLEN-1 | X   | LEN-4 | XI   | EN-5 | XLI     | EN-6 | Xl | LEN-11 |    | XLEN | V-12 |        |      | 23  | 22   | 21   | 20 | 19   | ) |
|--------|-----|-------|------|------|---------|------|----|--------|----|------|------|--------|------|-----|------|------|----|------|---|
| type   |     | dn    | node |      | maskmax |      |    |        | 0  |      |      |        | size | ehi | hit  | sele | ct |      |   |
|        | 4   |       |      | 1    |         | 6    | 6  |        |    |      | XLI  | EN - 3 | 34   |     | 2    | ?    | 1  | 1    |   |
| 1      | .8  | 17    | 16   | 15   | 12      | 11   |    | 10     | 7  | 6    | 5    | 4      | 3    |     | 2    | 1    |    | 0    |   |
| tim    | ing | size  | lo   | act  | ion     | chai | n  | mato   | ch | m    | 0    | S      | u    | exe | cute | sto  | re | load | ı |
|        | 1   | 2     |      | 4    | 1       | 1    |    | 4      |    | 1    | 1    | 1      | 1    |     | 1    | 1    |    | 1    |   |

| Field   | Description   | Access | Reset  |
|---------|---|--------|--------|
| maskmax | Specifies the largest naturally aligned powers-of-  | R      | Preset |
|         | two (NAPOT) range supported by the hardware         |        |        |
|         | when match is 1. The value is the logarithm base    |        |        |
|         | 2 of the number of bytes in that range. A value of  |        |        |
|         | 0 indicates match 1 is not supported. A value of    |        |        |
|         | 63 corresponds to the maximum NAPOT range,          |        |        |
|         | which is $2^{63}$ bytes in size.                    |        |        |
| sizehi  | This field only exists when XLEN is at least 64.    | WARL   | 0      |
|         | It contains the 2 high bits of the access size. The |        |        |
|         | low bits come from sizelo. See sizelo for how this  |        |        |
|         | is used.  |        |        |

| Field  | Description  | Access | Reset |
|--------|--|--------|-------|
| hit    | If this bit is implemented then it must become set   | WARL   | 0     |
|        | when this trigger fires and may become set when      |        |       |
|        | this trigger matches. The trigger's user can set or  |        |       |
|        | clear it at any time. It is used to determine which  |        |       |
|        | trigger(s) matched. If the bit is not implemented,   |        |       |
|        | it is always 0 and writing it has no effect.         |        |       |
| select | This bit determines the contents of the XLEN-bit     | WARL   | 0     |
|        | compare values.                                      |        |       |
|        | 0 (address): There is at least one compare value     |        |       |
|        | and it contains the lowest virtual address of the    |        |       |
|        | access. It is recommended that there are ad-         |        |       |
|        | ditional compare values for the other accessed       |        |       |
|        | virtual addresses. (E.g. on a 32-bit read from       |        |       |
|        | 0x4000, the lowest address is $0x4000$ and the other |        |       |
|        | addresses are 0x4001, 0x4002, and 0x4003.)           |        |       |
|        | 1 (data): There is exactly one compare value and     |        |       |
|        | it contains the data value loaded or stored, or the  |        |       |
|        | instruction executed. Any bits beyond the size of    |        |       |
|        | the data access will contain 0.                      |        |       |

| Field  | Description   | Access | Reset |
|--------|---|--------|-------|
| timing | 0 (before): The action for this trigger will be         | WARL   | 0     |
|        | taken just before the instruction that triggered        |        |       |
|        | it is committed, but after all preceding instruc-       |        |       |
|        | tions are committed. xepc or dpc (depending on          |        |       |
|        | action) must be set to the virtual address of the       |        |       |
|        | instruction that matched.                               |        |       |
|        | If this is combined with $load$ and $select = 1$ then a |        |       |
|        | memory access will be performed (including any          |        |       |
|        | side effects of performing such an access) even         |        |       |
|        | though the load will not update its destination         |        |       |
|        | register. Debuggers should consider this when set-      |        |       |
|        | ting such breakpoints on, for example, memory-          |        |       |
|        | mapped I/O addresses.                                   |        |       |
|        | 1 (after): The action for this trigger will be taken    |        |       |
|        | after the instruction that triggered it is commit-      |        |       |
|        | ted. It should be taken before the next instruction     |        |       |
|        | is committed, but it is better to implement trig-       |        |       |
|        | gers imprecisely than to not implement them at          |        |       |
|        | all. xepc or dpc (depending on action) must be          |        |       |
|        | set to the virtual address of the next instruction      |        |       |
|        | that must be executed to preserve the program           |        |       |
|        | flow.   |        |       |
|        | Most hardware will only implement one timing or         |        |       |
|        | the other, possibly dependent on select, execute,       |        |       |
|        | load, and store. This bit primarily exists for the      |        |       |
|        | hardware to communicate to the debugger what            |        |       |
|        | will happen. Hardware may implement the bit             |        |       |
|        | fully writable, in which case the debugger has a        |        |       |
|        | little more control.                                    |        |       |
|        | Data load triggers with timing of 0 will result in      |        |       |
|        | the same load happening again when the debugger         |        |       |
|        | lets the hart run. For data load triggers, debug-       |        |       |
|        | gers must first attempt to set the breakpoint with      |        |       |
|        | timing of 1.  |        |       |
|        | If a trigger with timing of 0 matches, it is            |        |       |
|        | implementation-dependent whether that prevents          |        |       |
|        | a trigger with timing of 1 matching as well.            |        |       |

| Field  | Description   | Access | Reset |
|--------|---|--------|-------|
| sizelo | This field contains the 2 low bits of the access size.  The high bits come from sizehi. The combined    | WARL   | 0     |
|        | value is interpreted as follows:  |        |       |
|        | 0 (any): The trigger will attempt to match against<br>an access of any size. The behavior is only well- |        |       |
|        | defined if select $= 0$ , or if the access size is XLEN.  |        |       |
|        | 1 (8bit): The trigger will only match against 8-bit   |        |       |
|        | memory accesses.  |        |       |
|        | 2 (16bit): The trigger will only match against  |        |       |
|        | 16-bit memory accesses or execution of 16-bit in-   |        |       |
|        | structions.   |        |       |
|        | 3 (32bit): The trigger will only match against  |        |       |
|        | 32-bit memory accesses or execution of 32-bit in-   |        |       |
|        | structions.   |        |       |
|        | 4 (48bit): The trigger will only match against ex-  |        |       |
|        | ecution of 48-bit instructions.   |        |       |
|        | 5 (64bit): The trigger will only match against  |        |       |
|        | 64-bit memory accesses or execution of 64-bit in-   |        |       |
|        | structions.   |        |       |
|        | 6 (80bit): The trigger will only match against execution of 80-bit instructions.                        |        |       |
|        | 7 (96bit): The trigger will only match against ex-  |        |       |
|        | ecution of 96-bit instructions.   |        |       |
|        | 8 (112bit): The trigger will only match against   |        |       |
|        | execution of 112-bit instructions.  |        |       |
|        | 9 (128bit): The trigger will only match against   |        |       |
|        | 128-bit memory accesses or execution of 128-bit   |        |       |
|        | instructions.   |        |       |
|        | An implementation must support the value of 0,  |        |       |
|        | but all other values are optional. When an imple-   |        |       |
|        | mentation supports address triggers (select $=0$ ),   |        |       |
|        | it is recommended that those triggers support ev-   |        |       |
|        | ery access size that the hart supports, as well as  |        |       |
|        | for every instruction size that the hart supports.  |        |       |
|        | Implementations such as RV32D or RV64V are  |        |       |
|        | able to perform loads and stores that are wider   |        |       |
|        | than XLEN. Custom extensions may also support   |        |       |
|        | instructions that are wider than XLEN. Because tdata2 is of size XLEN, there is a known lim-            |        |       |
|        | itation that data value triggers (select =1) can  |        |       |
|        | only be supported for access sizes up to XLEN   |        |       |
|        | bits. When an implementation supports data  |        |       |
|        | value triggers (select =1), it is recommended that  |        |       |
|        | those triggers support every access size up to  |        |       |
|        | XLEN that the hart supports, as well as for ev-   |        |       |
|        | ery instruction length up to XLEN that the hart   |        |       |
|        | supports.   |        |       |

| Field  | Description   | Access | Reset |
|--------|---|--------|-------|
| action | The action to take when the trigger fires. The          | WARL   | 0     |
|        | values are explained in Table 5.1.                      |        |       |
| chain  | 0 (disabled): When this trigger matches, the con-       | WARL   | 0     |
|        | figured action is taken.                                |        |       |
|        | 1 (enabled): While this trigger does not match,         |        |       |
|        | it prevents the trigger with the next index from        |        |       |
|        | matching.   |        |       |
|        | A trigger chain starts on the first trigger with        |        |       |
|        | chain = 1 after a trigger with chain = $0$ , or simply  |        |       |
|        | on the first trigger if that has $chain = 1$ . It ends  |        |       |
|        | on the first trigger after that which has $chain = 0$ . |        |       |
|        | This final trigger is part of the chain. The action     |        |       |
|        | on all but the final trigger is ignored. The action     |        |       |
|        | on that final trigger will be taken if and only if all  |        |       |
|        | the triggers in the chain match at the same time.       |        |       |
|        | Debuggers should not terminate a chain with a           |        |       |
|        | trigger with a different type. It is undefined when     |        |       |
|        | exactly such a chain fires.                             |        |       |
|        | Because chain affects the next trigger, hardware        |        |       |
|        | must zero it in writes to mcontrol that set dmode       |        |       |
|        | to 0 if the next trigger has dmode of 1. In addition    |        |       |
|        | hardware should ignore writes to mcontrol that          |        |       |
|        | set dmode to 1 if the previous trigger has both         |        |       |
|        | dmode of 0 and chain of 1. Debuggers must avoid         |        |       |
|        | the latter case by checking chain on the previous       |        |       |
|        | trigger if they're writing mcontrol.                    |        |       |
|        | Implementations that wish to limit the maximum          |        |       |
|        | length of a trigger chain (eg. to meet timing re-       |        |       |
|        | quirements) may do so by zeroing chain in writes        |        |       |
|        | to mcontrol that would make the chain too long.         |        |       |

| Field | Description  | Access | Reset |
|-------|--|--------|-------|
| match | 0 (equal): Matches when any compare value                        | WARL   | 0     |
|       | equals tdata2.   |        |       |
|       | 1 (napot): Matches when the top $M$ bits of any                  |        |       |
|       | compare value match the top $M$ bits of tdata2.                  |        |       |
|       | M is XLEN $-1$ minus the index of the least-                     |        |       |
|       | significant bit containing 0 in tdata2. Debug-                   |        |       |
|       | gers should only write values to tdata2 such that                |        |       |
|       | $M+\text{maskmax} \ge XLEN$ and $M>0$ , otherwise                |        |       |
|       | it's undefined on what conditions the trigger will match.        |        |       |
|       | 2 (ge): Matches when any compare value is                        |        |       |
|       | greater than (unsigned) or equal to tdata2.                      |        |       |
|       | 3 (lt): Matches when any compare value is less                   |        |       |
|       | than (unsigned) tdata2.  |        |       |
|       | 4 (mask low): Matches when $\frac{\text{XLEN}}{2} - 1:0$ of any  |        |       |
|       | compare value equals $\frac{XLEN}{2} - 1:0$ of tdata2 after      |        |       |
|       | $\frac{\text{XLEN}}{2} - 1:0$ of the compare value is ANDed with |        |       |
|       |  |        |       |
|       | $XLEN - 1: \frac{XLEN}{2}$ of tdata2.                            |        |       |
|       | 5 (mask high): Matches when $XLEN - 1$ : $\frac{XLEN}{2}$ of     |        |       |
|       | any compare value equals $\frac{XLEN}{2} - 1:0$ of tdata2        |        |       |
|       | after XLEN $-1:\frac{XLEN}{2}$ of the compare value is           |        |       |
|       | ANDed with $XLEN - 1: \frac{XLEN}{2}$ of tdata2.                 |        |       |
|       | 8 (not equal): Matches when match = 0 would                      |        |       |
|       | not match.   |        |       |
|       | 9 (not napot): Matches when $match = 1$ would                    |        |       |
|       | not match.   |        |       |
|       | 12 (not mask low): Matches when match = 4                        |        |       |
|       | would not match.   |        |       |
|       | 13 (not mask high): Matches when match = 5                       |        |       |
|       | would not match.  Other values are reserved for future use.      |        |       |
|       | All comparisons only look at the lower XLEN (in                  |        |       |
|       | the current mode) bits of the compare values and                 |        |       |
|       | of tdata2. When select =1 and access size is N,                  |        |       |
|       | this is further reduced, and comparisons only look               |        |       |
|       | at the lower N bits of the compare values and of                 |        |       |
|       | tdata2.  |        |       |
| m     | When set, enable this trigger in M-mode.                         | WARL   | 0     |
| S     | When set, enable this trigger in S/HS-mode. This                 | WARL   | 0     |
|       | bit is hard-wired to 0 if the hart does not support              |        |       |
|       | S-mode.  |        |       |
| u     | When set, enable this trigger in U-mode. This                    | WARL   | 0     |
|       | bit is hard-wired to 0 if the hart does not support              |        |       |
|       | U-mode.  |        |       |

| Field   | Description  | Access | Reset |
|---------|--|--------|-------|
| execute | When set, the trigger fires on the virtual address | WARL   | 0     |
|         | or opcode of an instruction that is executed.      |        |       |
| store   | When set, the trigger fires on the virtual address | WARL   | 0     |
|         | or data of any store.                              |        |       |
| load    | When set, the trigger fires on the virtual address | WARL   | 0     |
|         | or data of any load.                               |        |       |

#### 5.5.12 Match Control Type 6 (mcontrol6, at 0x7a1)

This register is accessible as tdata1 when type is 6.

This replaces montrol in newer implementations and serves to provide additional functionality.

Address and data trigger implementation are heavily dependent on how the processor core is implemented. To accommodate various implementations, execute, load, and store address/data triggers may fire at whatever point in time is most convenient for the implementation. The debugger may request specific timings as described in timing. Table 5.10 suggests timings for the best user experience.

Table 5.10: Suggested Trigger Timings

| 3.5 3.5                     | ~                        |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| Match Type                  | Suggested Trigger Timing |
| Execute Address             | Before                   |
| Execute Instruction         | Before                   |
| Execute Address+Instruction | Before                   |
| Load Address                | Before                   |
| Load Data                   | After                    |
| Load Address+Data           | After                    |
| Store Address               | Before                   |
| Store Data                  | Before                   |
| Store Address+Data          | Before                   |

A chain of triggers that don't all have the same timing value will never fire. That means to implement the suggestions in Table 5.10, both timings should be supported on load address triggers.

This trigger type may be limited to address comparisons (select is always 0) only. If that is the case and masking is not supported (match values 4, 5, 12, 13), then tdata2 must be able to hold all valid virtual addresses but it need not be capable of holding other values.

The Privileged Spec says that breakpoint exceptions that occur on instruction fetches, loads, or stores update the tval CSR with either zero or the faulting virtual address. The faulting virtual address for an mcontrol6 trigger with action =0 is the address being accessed and which caused that trigger to fire. If multiple mcontrol6 triggers are chained then the faulting virtual address is the address which caused any of the chained triggers to fire.

In implementations that support match mode 1 (NAPOT), not all NAPOT ranges may be sup-

ported. All NAPOT ranges between  $2^1$  and  $2^{maskmax6}$  are supported where maskmax $6 \ge 1$ . The value of maskmax6 can be determined by the debugger via the following sequence:

- 1. Set match =1.
- 2. Read match. If it is not 1 then NAPOT matching is not supported.
- 3. Write all ones to tdata2.
- 4. Read tdata2. The value of maskmax6 is the index of the most significant 0 bit plus 1.

If the A extension is supported, then trigger behavior is as follows for the load and store bits:

- 1. lr instructions are loads
- 2. successful sc instructions are stores
- 3. it is unspecified whether failing sc instructions are stores or not
- 4. Each AMO instruction is a load for the read portion of the operation. The address is always available to trigger on, although the value loaded might not be, depending on the hardware implementation.
- 5. Each AMO instruction is a store for the write portion of the operation. The address is always available to trigger on, although the value stored might not be, depending on the hardware implementation.

If the destination register of any load or AMO is zero then it is UNSPECIFIED whether a load trigger with select =1 will match. Whether store triggers with select =1 match on AMOs is UNSPECIFIED.

If textra32 or textra64 are implemented for this trigger, it only matches when the conditions set there are satisfied.

This CSR is read/write.

|        | XLEN- | 1 2  | XLEN- | 4 X | LEN-5 | XLEN | -6  |        | 2 | 25 | 24 | 23  | 22    | 21     |      |
|--------|-------|------|-------|-----|-------|------|-----|--------|---|----|----|-----|-------|--------|------|
|        |       | type | !     | d   | mode  |      |     | 0      |   |    | vs | vu  | hit   | select |      |
|        |       | 4    |       |     | 1     |      | XLE | N - 30 | ) |    | 1  | 1   | 1     | 1      | -    |
| 20     | 19    | 16   | 15    | 12  | 11    | 10   | 7   | 6      | 5 | 4  | 3  |     | 2     | 1      | 0    |
| timing | g si: | ze   | act   | ion | chain | mat  | tch | m      | 0 | S  | u  | exe | ecute | store  | load |
| 1      |       | 4    |       | 4   | 1     |      |     | 1      | 1 | 1  | 1  |     | 1     | 1      | 1    |

| Field | Description   | Access | Reset |
|-------|---|--------|-------|
| VS    | When set, enable this trigger in VS-mode. This      | WARL   | 0     |
|       | bit is hard-wired to 0 if the hart does not support |        |       |
|       | virtualization mode.                                |        |       |
| vu    | When set, enable this trigger in VU-mode. This      | WARL   | 0     |
|       | bit is hard-wired to 0 if the hart does not support |        |       |
|       | virtualization mode.                                |        |       |

| Field  | Description   | Access | Reset |
|--------|---|--------|-------|
| hit    | If this bit is implemented then it must become set  | WARL   | 0     |
|        | when this trigger fires and may become set when     |        |       |
|        | this trigger matches. The trigger's user can set or |        |       |
|        | clear it at any time. It is used to determine which |        |       |
|        | trigger(s) matched. If the bit is not implemented,  |        |       |
|        | it is always 0 and writing it has no effect.        |        |       |
| select | This bit determines the contents of the XLEN-bit    | WARL   | 0     |
|        | compare values.                                     |        |       |
|        | 0 (address): There is at least one compare value    |        |       |
|        | and it contains the lowest virtual address of the   |        |       |
|        | access. In addition, it is recommended that there   |        |       |
|        | are additional compare values for the other ac-     |        |       |
|        | cessed virtual addresses match. (E.g. on a 32-bit   |        |       |
|        | read from 0x4000, the lowest address is 0x4000      |        |       |
|        | and the other addresses are 0x4001, 0x4002, and     |        |       |
|        | 0x4003.)  |        |       |
|        | 1 (data): There is exactly one compare value and    |        |       |
|        | it contains the data value loaded or stored, or the |        |       |
|        | instruction executed. Any bits beyond the size of   |        |       |
|        | the data access will contain 0.                     |        |       |

| Field  | Description   | Access | Reset |
|--------|---|--------|-------|
| timing | 0 (before): The action for this trigger will be         | WARL   | 0     |
|        | taken just before the instruction that triggered        |        |       |
|        | it is committed, but after all preceding instruc-       |        |       |
|        | tions are committed. xepc or dpc (depending on          |        |       |
|        | action) must be set to the virtual address of the       |        |       |
|        | instruction that matched.                               |        |       |
|        | If this is combined with $load$ and $select = 1$ then a |        |       |
|        | memory access will be performed (including any          |        |       |
|        | side effects of performing such an access) even         |        |       |
|        | though the load will not update its destination         |        |       |
|        | register. Debuggers should consider this when set-      |        |       |
|        | ting such breakpoints on, for example, memory-          |        |       |
|        | mapped I/O addresses.                                   |        |       |
|        | 1 (after): The action for this trigger will be taken    |        |       |
|        | after the instruction that triggered it is commit-      |        |       |
|        | ted. It should be taken before the next instruction     |        |       |
|        | is committed, but it is better to implement trig-       |        |       |
|        | gers imprecisely than to not implement them at          |        |       |
|        | all. xepc or dpc (depending on action) must be          |        |       |
|        | set to the virtual address of the next instruction      |        |       |
|        | that must be executed to preserve the program flow.     |        |       |
|        | Most hardware will only implement one timing or         |        |       |
|        | the other, possibly dependent on select, execute,       |        |       |
|        | load, and store. This bit primarily exists for the      |        |       |
|        | hardware to communicate to the debugger what            |        |       |
|        | will happen. Hardware may implement the bit             |        |       |
|        | fully writable, in which case the debugger has a        |        |       |
|        | little more control.                                    |        |       |
|        | Data load triggers with timing of 0 will result in      |        |       |
|        | the same load happening again when the debugger         |        |       |
|        | lets the hart run. For data load triggers, debug-       |        |       |
|        | gers must first attempt to set the breakpoint with      |        |       |
|        | timing of 1.  |        |       |
|        | If a trigger with timing of 0 matches, it is            |        |       |
|        | implementation-dependent whether that prevents          |        |       |
|        | a trigger with timing of 1 matching as well.            |        |       |

| Field  | Description  | Access | Reset |
|--------|--|--------|-------|
| size   | 0 (any): The trigger will attempt to match against                               | WARL   | 0     |
|        | an access of any size. The behavior is only well-                                |        |       |
|        | defined if $select = 0$ , or if the access size is XLEN.                         |        |       |
|        | 1 (8bit): The trigger will only match against 8-bit                              |        |       |
|        | memory accesses.   |        |       |
|        | 2 (16bit): The trigger will only match against                                   |        |       |
|        | 16-bit memory accesses or execution of 16-bit in-                                |        |       |
|        | structions.  |        |       |
|        | 3 (32bit): The trigger will only match against                                   |        |       |
|        | 32-bit memory accesses or execution of 32-bit in-                                |        |       |
|        | structions.  |        |       |
|        | 4 (48bit): The trigger will only match against ex-                               |        |       |
|        | ecution of 48-bit instructions.  |        |       |
|        | 5 (64bit): The trigger will only match against                                   |        |       |
|        | 64-bit memory accesses or execution of 64-bit in-                                |        |       |
|        | structions.  |        |       |
|        | 6 (80bit): The trigger will only match against ex-                               |        |       |
|        | ecution of 80-bit instructions.  |        |       |
|        | 7 (96bit): The trigger will only match against execution of 96-bit instructions. |        |       |
|        | 8 (112bit): The trigger will only match against                                  |        |       |
|        | execution of 112-bit instructions.   |        |       |
|        | 9 (128bit): The trigger will only match against                                  |        |       |
|        | 128-bit memory accesses or execution of 128-bit                                  |        |       |
|        | instructions.  |        |       |
|        | An implementation must support the value of 0,                                   |        |       |
|        | but all other values are optional. When an imple-                                |        |       |
|        | mentation supports address triggers (select =0),                                 |        |       |
|        | it is recommended that those triggers support ev-                                |        |       |
|        | ery access size that the hart supports, as well as                               |        |       |
|        | for every instruction size that the hart supports.                               |        |       |
|        | Implementations such as RV32D or RV64V are                                       |        |       |
|        | able to perform loads and stores that are wider                                  |        |       |
|        | than XLEN. Custom extensions may also support                                    |        |       |
|        | instructions that are wider than XLEN. Because                                   |        |       |
|        | tdata2 is of size XLEN, there is a known lim-                                    |        |       |
|        | itation that data value triggers (select =1) can                                 |        |       |
|        | only be supported for access sizes up to XLEN                                    |        |       |
|        | bits. When an implementation supports data                                       |        |       |
|        | value triggers (select =1), it is recommended that                               |        |       |
|        | those triggers support every access size up to                                   |        |       |
|        | XLEN that the hart supports, as well as for ev-                                  |        |       |
|        | ery instruction length up to XLEN that the hart                                  |        |       |
|        | supports.  | XXADI  | 0     |
| action | The action to take when the trigger fires. The                                   | WARL   | 0     |
|        | values are explained in Table 5.1.   |        |       |

| Field | Description  | Access | Reset |
|-------|--|--------|-------|
| chain | 0 (disabled): When this trigger matches, the con-          | WARL   | 0     |
|       | figured action is taken.                                   |        |       |
|       | 1 (enabled): While this trigger does not match,            |        |       |
|       | it prevents the trigger with the next index from matching. |        |       |
|       | A trigger chain starts on the first trigger with           |        |       |
|       | chain = 1 after a trigger with chain = $0$ , or simply     |        |       |
|       | on the first trigger if that has $chain = 1$ . It ends     |        |       |
|       | on the first trigger after that which has $chain = 0$ .    |        |       |
|       | This final trigger is part of the chain. The action        |        |       |
|       | on all but the final trigger is ignored. The action        |        |       |
|       | on that final trigger will be taken if and only if all     |        |       |
|       | the triggers in the chain match at the same time.          |        |       |
|       | Debuggers should not terminate a chain with a              |        |       |
|       | trigger with a different type. It is undefined when        |        |       |
|       | exactly such a chain fires.                                |        |       |
|       | Because chain affects the next trigger, hardware           |        |       |
|       | must zero it in writes to mcontrol6 that set               |        |       |
|       | dmode to 0 if the next trigger has dmode of                |        |       |
|       | 1. In addition hardware should ignore writes to            |        |       |
|       | mcontrol6 that set dmode to 1 if the previous              |        |       |
|       | trigger has both dmode of 0 and chain of 1. De-            |        |       |
|       | buggers must avoid the latter case by checking             |        |       |
|       | chain on the previous trigger if they're writing           |        |       |
|       | mcontrol6.   |        |       |
|       | Implementations that wish to limit the maximum             |        |       |
|       | length of a trigger chain (eg. to meet timing re-          |        |       |
|       | quirements) may do so by zeroing chain in writes           |        |       |
|       | to mcontrol6 that would make the chain too long.           |        |       |

| Field | Description  | Access | Reset |
|-------|--|--------|-------|
| match | 0 (equal): Matches when any compare value                          | WARL   | 0     |
|       | equals tdata2.   |        |       |
|       | 1 (napot): Matches when the top $M$ bits of any                    |        |       |
|       | compare value match the top $M$ bits of tdata2.                    |        |       |
|       | M is XLEN $-1$ minus the index of the least-                       |        |       |
|       | significant bit containing 0 in tdata2. tdata2                     |        |       |
|       | is WARL and if bits $maskmax6 - 1:0$ are writ-                     |        |       |
|       | ten with all ones then bit $maskmax6 - 1$ will be                  |        |       |
|       | set to 0 while the values of bits $maskmax6 - 2:0$                 |        |       |
|       | are unspecified. Legal values for tdata2 require                   |        |       |
|       | $M + \text{maskmax6} \ge XLEN \text{ and } M > 0.$ See above       |        |       |
|       | for how to determine maskmax6.                                     |        |       |
|       | 2 (ge): Matches when any compare value is                          |        |       |
|       | greater than (unsigned) or equal to tdata2.                        |        |       |
|       | 3 (lt): Matches when any compare value is less                     |        |       |
|       | than (unsigned) tdata2.  |        |       |
|       | 4 (mask low): Matches when $\frac{XLEN}{2} - 1:0$ of any           |        |       |
|       | compare value equals $\frac{\text{XLEN}}{2} - 1:0$ of tdata2 after |        |       |
|       | $\frac{XLEN}{2} - 1:0$ of the compare value is ANDed with          |        |       |
|       | $XLEN - 1: \frac{XLEN}{2}$ of tdata2.                              |        |       |
|       | 5 (mask high): Matches when $XLEN - 1: \frac{XLEN}{2}$ of          |        |       |
|       | any compare value equals $\frac{XLEN}{2} - 1:0$ of tdata2          |        |       |
|       | after XLEN $-1:\frac{XLEN}{2}$ of the compare value is             |        |       |
|       | ANDed with $XLEN - 1: \frac{XLEN}{2}$ of tdata2.                   |        |       |
|       | 8 (not equal): Matches when $match = 0$ would                      |        |       |
|       | not match.   |        |       |
|       | 9 (not napot): Matches when match = 1 would                        |        |       |
|       | not match.   |        |       |
|       | 12 (not mask low): Matches when match = 4 would not match.         |        |       |
|       | 13 (not mask high): Matches when match = 5                         |        |       |
|       | would not match.   |        |       |
|       | Other values are reserved for future use.                          |        |       |
|       | All comparisons only look at the lower XLEN (in                    |        |       |
|       | the current mode) bits of the compare values and                   |        |       |
|       | of tdata2. When select =1 and access size is N,                    |        |       |
|       | this is further reduced, and comparisons only look                 |        |       |
|       | at the lower N bits of the compare values and of                   |        |       |
|       | tdata2.  |        |       |
| m     | When set, enable this trigger in M-mode.                           | WARL   | 0     |
| S     | When set, enable this trigger in S/HS-mode. This                   | WARL   | 0     |
|       | bit is hard-wired to 0 if the hart does not support                |        |       |
|       | S-mode.  |        |       |

| Field   | Description   | Access | Reset |
|---------|---|--------|-------|
| u       | When set, enable this trigger in U-mode. This       | WARL   | 0     |
|         | bit is hard-wired to 0 if the hart does not support |        |       |
|         | U-mode.   |        |       |
| execute | When set, the trigger fires on the virtual address  | WARL   | 0     |
|         | or opcode of an instruction that is executed.       |        |       |
| store   | When set, the trigger fires on the virtual address  | WARL   | 0     |
|         | or data of any store.                               |        |       |
| load    | When set, the trigger fires on the virtual address  | WARL   | 0     |
|         | or data of any load.                                |        |       |

#### 5.5.13 Instruction Count (icount, at 0x7a1)

This register is accessible as tdata1 when type is 3.

This trigger matches on every instruction completed or trap taken from a privilege mode where the trigger is enabled.

When **count** is greater than 1 and the trigger matches, then **count** is decremented by 1. (This is true even if the action configured in the trigger is inhibited for some reason.)

When **count** is 1 and the trigger matches, then **pending** becomes set. In addition **count** will become 0 unless it is hard-wired to 1.

The only exception to the above is when the instruction the trigger matched on is a write to the icount trigger. In that case pending might or might not become set if count was 1. Afterwards count contains the newly written value.

When **count** is 0 it stays at 0 until explicitly written.

When pending is set, the trigger fires just before any further instructions are executed in a mode where the trigger is enabled. As the trigger fires, pending is cleared. In addition, if count is hard-wired to 1 then m, s, u, vs, and vu are all cleared.

If the trigger fires with action =0 then zero is written to the tval CSR on the breakpoint trap.

The intent of pending is to cleanly handle the case where action is 0, m is 0, u is 1, count is 1, and the U-mode instruction being executed causes a trap into M-mode. In that case we want the entire M-mode handler to be executed, and the debug trap to be taken before the next U-mode instruction.

This trigger type is intended to be used as a single step for software monitor programs or native debug. Systems that support multiple privilege modes that want to debug software running in lower privilege modes don't need to support count greater than 1.

If textra32 or textra64 are implemented for this trigger, it only matches when the conditions set there are satisfied.

| XLEN-1 | XLEN-4 | XLEN-5 |     | XLEN-6  |    |   | 27 | 26   | 25  | 24 |
|--------|--------|--------|-----|---------|----|---|----|------|-----|----|
| typ    | dmo    | ode 0  |     |         |    |   | VS | vu   | hit |    |
| 4      | 1      |        | XLE | N - 3   | 32 | 1 | 1  | 1    |     |    |
|        | 23     | 10     | 9   | 8       | 7  | 6 | 5  | 0    |     |    |
|        | count  |        | m   | pending | S  | u | ac | tion |     |    |
|        | 14     |        | 1   | 1       | 1  | 1 |    | 6    |     |    |

| Field   | Description  | Access | Reset |
|---------|--|--------|-------|
| VS      | When set, enable this trigger in VS-mode. This       | WARL   | 0     |
|         | bit is hard-wired to 0 if the hart does not support  |        |       |
|         | virtualization mode.                                 |        |       |
| vu      | When set, enable this trigger in VU-mode. This       | WARL   | 0     |
|         | bit is hard-wired to 0 if the hart does not support  |        |       |
|         | virtualization mode.                                 |        |       |
| hit     | If this bit is implemented, the hardware sets it     | WARL   | 0     |
|         | when this trigger fires. The trigger's user can      |        |       |
|         | set or clear it at any time. It is used to deter-    |        |       |
|         | mine which trigger(s) fires. If the bit is not im-   |        |       |
|         | plemented, it is always 0 and writing it has no      |        |       |
|         | effect.  |        |       |
| count   | The trigger will generally fire after count instruc- | WARL   | 1     |
|         | tions in enabled modes have been executed. See       |        |       |
|         | above for the precise behavior.                      |        |       |
| m       | When set, enable this trigger in M-mode.             | WARL   | 0     |
| pending | This bit becomes set when count is decremented       | R/W    | 0     |
|         | from 1 to 0. It is cleared when the trigger fires,   |        |       |
|         | which will happen just before executing the next     |        |       |
|         | instruction in one of the enabled modes.             |        |       |
| S       | When set, enable this trigger in S/HS-mode. This     | WARL   | 0     |
|         | bit is hard-wired to 0 if the hart does not support  |        |       |
|         | S-mode.  |        |       |
| u       | When set, enable this trigger in U-mode. This        | WARL   | 0     |
|         | bit is hard-wired to 0 if the hart does not support  |        |       |
|         | U-mode.  |        |       |
| action  | The action to take when the trigger fires. The       | WARL   | 0     |
|         | values are explained in Table 5.1.                   |        |       |

#### 5.5.14 Interrupt Trigger (itrigger, at 0x7a1)

This register is accessible as tdata1 when type is 4.

This trigger may fire on any of the interrupts configurable in mie (described in the Privileged Spec) or the NMI. The interrupts to fire on are configured by setting the same bit in tdata2 as would be set in mie to enable the interrupt.

Hardware may only support a subset of interrupts for this trigger. A debugger must read back

tdata2 after writing it to confirm the requested functionality is actually supported.

The trigger only fires if the hart takes a trap because of the interrupt. (E.g. it does not fire when a timer interrupt occurs but that interrupt is not enabled in mie.)

When the trigger fires, all CSRs are updated for the interrupt trap as defined by the Privileged Spec, and the requested action is taken just before the first instruction of the trap handler is executed. If the trigger fires with action =0 then zero is written to the tval CSR on the breakpoint trap (see 5.4).

If textra32 or textra64 are implemented for this trigger, it only matches when the conditions set there are satisfied.

This CSR is read/write.

| XLEN-1 | XLEN-4 | XLEN | -5 | XLE | N-6 | XI        | EN-7 |     |    | 13 | 12 | 11 |
|--------|--------|------|----|-----|-----|-----------|------|-----|----|----|----|----|
| type   |        | dmod | de | hi  | t   | 0         |      |     |    |    | VS | vu |
| 4      | Į.     | 1    |    | 1   |     | XLEN - 19 |      |     | 19 |    | 1  | 1  |
|        |        | 10   | 9  | 8   | 7   | 6         | 5    | 0   |    |    |    |    |
|        |        | nmi  | m  | 0   | S   | u         | act  | ion |    |    |    |    |
|        |        | 1    | 1  | 1   | 1   | 1         |      | 6   |    |    |    |    |

| Field | Description  | Access | Reset |
|-------|--|--------|-------|
| hit   | If this bit is implemented, the hardware sets it       | WARL   | 0     |
|       | when this trigger matches. The trigger's user can      |        |       |
|       | set or clear it at any time. It is used to deter-      |        |       |
|       | mine which trigger(s) matched. If the bit is not       |        |       |
|       | implemented, it is always 0 and writing it has no      |        |       |
|       | effect.  |        |       |
| VS    | When set, enable this trigger for interrupts that      | WARL   | 0     |
|       | are taken from VS mode. This bit is hard-wired         |        |       |
|       | to 0 if the hart does not support virtualization       |        |       |
|       | mode.  |        |       |
| vu    | When set, enable this trigger for interrupts that      | WARL   | 0     |
|       | are taken from VU mode. This bit is hard-wired         |        |       |
|       | to 0 if the hart does not support virtualization       |        |       |
|       | mode.  |        |       |
| nmi   | When set, non-maskable interrupts cause this           | WARL   | 0     |
|       | trigger to fire if the trigger is enabled for the cur- |        |       |
|       | rent mode.   |        |       |
| m     | When set, enable this trigger for interrupts that      | WARL   | 0     |
|       | are taken from M mode.                                 |        |       |
| S     | When set, enable this trigger for interrupts that      | WARL   | 0     |
|       | are taken from S/HS mode. This bit is hard-wired       |        |       |
|       | to 0 if the hart does not support S-mode.              |        |       |

| Field  | Description                                       | Access | Reset |
|--------|---|--------|-------|
| u      | When set, enable this trigger for interrupts that | WARL   | 0     |
|        | are taken from U mode. This bit is hard-wired to  |        |       |
|        | 0 if the hart does not support U-mode.            |        |       |
| action | The action to take when the trigger fires. The    | WARL   | 0     |
|        | values are explained in Table 5.1.                |        |       |

#### 5.5.15 Exception Trigger (etrigger, at 0x7a1)

This register is accessible as tdata1 when type is 5.

This trigger may fire on up to XLEN of the Exception Codes defined in mcause (described in the Privileged Spec, with Interrupt=0). Those causes are configured by writing the corresponding bit in tdata2. (E.g. to trap on an illegal instruction, the debugger sets bit 2 in tdata2.)

Hardware may support only a subset of exceptions. A debugger must read back tdata2 after writing it to confirm the requested functionality is actually supported.

When the trigger fires, all CSRs are updated for the exception as defined by the Privileged Spec, and the requested action is taken just before the first instruction of the trap handler is executed. If the trigger fires with action =0 then zero is written to the tval CSR on the breakpoint trap (see 5.4).

If textra32 or textra64 are implemented for this trigger, it only matches when the conditions set there are satisfied.

This CSR is read/write.

|     | XLEN-1 | XLEN-4 | XLEN-5 | XLEN-6    | XLEN-7 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 0    |  |
|-----|--------|--------|--------|-----------|--------|----|----|----|----|---|---|---|---|--------|--|
| typ |        | pe     | dmode  | hit       | 0      |    | VS | vu | 0  | m | 0 | S | u | action |  |
| 4   |        | 1      | 1      | XLEN - 19 |        | 1  | 1  | 1  | 1  | 1 | 1 | 1 | 6 |        |  |

| Field | Description                                       | Access | Reset |
|-------|---|--------|-------|
| hit   | If this bit is implemented, the hardware sets it  | WARL   | 0     |
|       | when this trigger matches. The trigger's user can |        |       |
|       | set or clear it at any time. It is used to deter- |        |       |
|       | mine which trigger(s) matched. If the bit is not  |        |       |
|       | implemented, it is always 0 and writing it has no |        |       |
|       | effect.   |        |       |
| VS    | When set, enable this trigger for exceptions that | WARL   | 0     |
|       | are taken from VS mode. This bit is hard-wired    |        |       |
|       | to 0 if the hart does not support virtualization  |        |       |
|       | mode.   |        |       |

| Field  | Description                                       | Access | Reset |
|--------|---|--------|-------|
| vu     | When set, enable this trigger for exceptions that | WARL   | 0     |
|        | are taken from VU mode. This bit is hard-wired    |        |       |
|        | to 0 if the hart does not support virtualization  |        |       |
|        | mode.   |        |       |
| m      | When set, enable this trigger for exceptions that | WARL   | 0     |
|        | are taken from M mode.                            |        |       |
| S      | When set, enable this trigger for exceptions that | WARL   | 0     |
|        | are taken from S/HS mode. This bit is hard-wired  |        |       |
|        | to 0 if the hart does not support S-mode.         |        |       |
| u      | When set, enable this trigger for exceptions that | WARL   | 0     |
|        | are taken from U mode. This bit is hard-wired to  |        |       |
|        | 0 if the hart does not support U-mode.            |        |       |
| action | The action to take when the trigger fires. The    | WARL   | 0     |
|        | values are explained in Table 5.1.                |        |       |

#### 5.5.16 External Trigger (tmexttrigger, at 0x7a1)

This register is accessible as tdata1 when type is 7.

This trigger fires when any selected TM external trigger input signals. Up to 16 TM external trigger inputs coming from other blocks outside the TM, (e.g. signaling an hymcounter overflow) can be selected. Hardware may support none or just a few TM external trigger inputs (starting with TM external trigger input 0 and continuing sequentially). Unsupported inputs are hardwired to be inactive.

If the trigger fires with action =0 then zero is written to the tval CSR on the breakpoint trap. This trigger fires asynchronously but it is subject to delegation by medeleg[3] like the other triggers.

The external trigger input can signal when the trigger is prevented from firing due to one of the mechanisms in section 5.4. An implementation may either ignore the signal altogether when it cannot fire (dropping the trigger event) or it may hold the action as pending and fire the trigger once it is legal to do so.

| XLEN-1 | XLEN-4 | XLEN-5 | XLEN-6 | XLEN-7 | 23     | 22     | 21 |        | 6 | 5    | 0  |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|----|--------|---|------|----|
| ty     | pe     | dmode  | hit    | (      | )      | intctl |    | select |   | acti | on |
| 4      |        | 1      | 1      | XLE    | N - 29 | 1      |    | 16     |   | 6    |    |

| Field  | Description   | Access | Reset |
|--------|---|--------|-------|
| hit    | If this bit is implemented, the hardware sets it    | WARL   | 0     |
|        | when this trigger matches. The trigger's user can   |        |       |
|        | set or clear it at any time. It is used to deter-   |        |       |
|        | mine which trigger(s) matched. If the bit is not    |        |       |
|        | implemented, it is always 0 and writing it has no   |        |       |
|        | effect.   |        |       |
| intctl | This optional bit, when set, causes this trigger    | WARL   | 0     |
|        | to fire whenever an attached interrupt controller   |        |       |
|        | signals a trigger.                                  |        |       |
| select | Selects any combination of up to 16 external de-    | WARL   | 0     |
|        | bug trigger inputs that cause this trigger to fire. |        |       |
| action | The action to take when the trigger fires. The      | WARL   | 0     |
|        | values are explained in Table 5.1.                  |        |       |

#### 5.5.17 Trigger Extra (RV32) (textra32, at 0x7a3)

This register is accessible as tdata3 when type is 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 and XLEN=32.

All functionality in this register is optional. The value bits may tie any number of upper bits to 0. The select bits may only support 0 (ignore).

Byte-granular comparison of scontext to svalue allows scontext to be defined to include more than one element of comparison. For example, software instrumentation can program the scontext value to be the concatenation of different ID contexts such as process ID and thread ID. The user can then program byte compares based on sbytemask to include one or more of the contexts in the compare.

Byte masking only applies to scontext comparison; i.e when sselect is 1.

Note that seelect and mhselect filtering apply in all modes, including M-mode and S-mode. If desired, debuggers can use a trigger's mode filtering bits to restrict the matching to modes where it considers ASID/VMID/scontext/hcontext to be active.

| 31      | 26  | 25   | 23    | 22 | 20 | 19    | 18    | 17 |        | 2 | 1    | 0   |
|---------|-----|------|-------|----|----|-------|-------|----|--------|---|------|-----|
| mhvalue |     | mhse | elect | (  | )  | sbyte | emask |    | svalue |   | ssel | ect |
|         | 6 3 |      | 5     | 3  |    | 2     |       | 16 |        | 9 | )    |     |

| Field   | Description                       | Access | Reset |
|---------|-----------------------------------|--------|-------|
| mhvalue | Data used together with mhselect. | WARL   | 0     |

Continued on next page

| Field     | Description   | Access | Reset |
|-----------|---|--------|-------|
| mhselect  | 0 (ignore): Ignore mhvalue.                           | WARL   | 0     |
|           | 4 (mcontext): This trigger will only match if the     |        |       |
|           | low bits of mcontext/hcontext equal mhvalue.          |        |       |
|           | 1, 5 (mcontext_select): This trigger will only        |        |       |
|           | match if the low bits of mcontext/hcontext equal      |        |       |
|           | $\{mhvalue, mhselect[2]\}.$                           |        |       |
|           | 2, 6 (vmid_select): This trigger will only match      |        |       |
|           | if VMID in hgatp equals the lower VMIDMAX             |        |       |
|           | (defined in the Privileged Spec) bits of {mhvalue,    |        |       |
|           | mhselect[2].  |        |       |
|           | 3, 7 (reserved): Reserved.                            |        |       |
|           | If the H extension is not supported, the only legal   |        |       |
|           | values are 0 and 4.                                   |        |       |
| sbytemask | When the least significant bit of this field is 1, it | WARL   | 0     |
|           | causes bits 7:0 in the comparison to be ignored,      |        |       |
|           | when $sselect = 1$ . When the next most significant   |        |       |
|           | bit of this field is 1, it causes bits 15:8 to be ig- |        |       |
|           | nored in the comparison, when $sselect = 1$ .         |        |       |
| svalue    | Data used together with sselect.                      | WARL   | 0     |
|           | This field should be tied to 0 when S-mode is not     |        |       |
|           | supported.  |        |       |
| sselect   | 0 (ignore): Ignore svalue.                            | WARL   | 0     |
|           | 1 (scontext): This trigger will only match if the     |        |       |
|           | low bits of scontext equal svalue.                    |        |       |
|           | 2 (asid): This trigger will only match if:            |        |       |
|           | • the mode is VS-mode or VU-mode and                  |        |       |
|           | ASID in vsatp equals the lower ASID-                  |        |       |
|           | MAX (defined in the Privileged Spec) bits             |        |       |
|           | of svalue.  |        |       |
|           | • in all other modes, ASID in satp equals the         |        |       |
|           | lower ASIDMAX (defined in the Privileged              |        |       |
|           | Spec) bits of svalue.                                 |        |       |
|           | This field should be tied to 0 when S-mode is not     |        |       |
|           | supported.  |        |       |

#### 5.5.18 Trigger Extra (RV64) (textra64, at 0x7a3)

This register is accessible as tdata3 when type is 2, 3, 4, 5, or 6 and XLEN=64. The fields are defined above, in textra32.

Byte-granular comparison of scontext to svalue in textra64 allows scontext to be defined to include more than one element of comparison. For example, software instrumentation can program the scontext value to be the concatenation of different ID contexts such as process ID and thread ID. The user can then program byte compares based on sbytemask to include one or more of the contexts in the compare.

Byte masking only applies to scontext comparison; i.e when sselect is 1.

|    | 63    | 51  | 50   | 48    | 47 | 41 | 40    | 36   | 35 |        | $^2$ | 1    | 0   |
|----|-------|-----|------|-------|----|----|-------|------|----|--------|------|------|-----|
|    | mhval | lue | mhse | elect |    | 0  | sbyte | mask |    | svalue |      | ssel | ect |
| 13 |       | 3   | 3    |       | 7  |    | 5     |      | 34 |        | 2    |      |     |

| Field     | Description  | Access | Reset |
|-----------|--|--------|-------|
| sbytemask | When the least significant bit of this field is 1, it  | WARL   | 0     |
|           | causes bits 7:0 in the comparison to be ignored,       |        |       |
|           | when $sselect = 1$ . Likewise, the second bit controls |        |       |
|           | the comparison of bits 15:8, third bit controls the    |        |       |
|           | comparison of bits 23:16, fourth bit controls the      |        |       |
|           | comparison of bits 31:24, and fifth bit controls the   |        |       |
|           | comparison of bits 33:32.                              |        |       |

# Chapter 6

# Debug Transport Module (DTM), non-ISA

Debug Transport Modules provide access to the DM over one or more transports (e.g. JTAG or USB).

There may be multiple DTMs in a single hardware platform. Ideally every component that communicates with the outside world includes a DTM, allowing a hardware platform to be debugged through every transport it supports. For instance a USB component could include a DTM. This would trivially allow any hardware platform to be debugged over USB. All that is required is that the USB module already in use also has access to the Debug Module Interface.

Using multiple DTMs at the same time is not supported. It is left to the user to ensure this does not happen.

This specification defines a JTAG DTM in Section 6.1. Additional DTMs may be added in future versions of this specification.

An implementation can be compatible with this specification without implementing any of this section. In that case it must be advertised as conforming to "RISC-V Debug Specification 1.0-STABLE, with custom DTM." If the JTAG DTM described here is implemented, it must be advertised as conforming to the "RISC-V Debug Specification 1.0-STABLE, with JTAG DTM."

# 6.1 JTAG Debug Transport Module

This Debug Transport Module is based around a normal JTAG Test Access Port (TAP). The JTAG TAP allows access to arbitrary JTAG registers by first selecting one using the JTAG instruction register (IR), and then accessing it through the JTAG data register (DR).

#### 6.1.1 JTAG Background

JTAG refers to IEEE Std 1149.1-2013. It is a standard that defines test logic that can be included in an integrated circuit to test the interconnections between integrated circuits, test the integrated circuit itself, and observe or modify circuit activity during the component's normal operation. This specification uses the latter functionality. The JTAG standard defines a Test Access Port (TAP) that can be used to read and write a few custom registers, which can be used to communicate with debug hardware in a component.

#### 6.1.2 JTAG DTM Registers

JTAG TAPs used as a DTM must have an IR of at least 5 bits. When the TAP is reset, IR must default to 00001, selecting the IDCODE instruction. A full list of JTAG registers along with their encoding is in Table 6.1. If the IR actually has more than 5 bits, then the encodings in Table 6.1 should be extended with 0's in their most significant bits, except for the 0x1f encoding of BYPASS, which must be extended with 1's in the most significant bits. The only regular JTAG registers a debugger might use are BYPASS and IDCODE, but this specification leaves IR space for many other standard JTAG instructions. Unimplemented instructions must select the BYPASS register.

Address Name Description Page JTAG recommends this encoding 0x00**BYPASS** 0x01**IDCODE** To identify a specific silicon version DTM Control and Status (dtmcs) For Debugging 0x1094 0x11Debug Module Interface Access (dmi) For Debugging 95 Reserved for future RISC-V debugging 0x12Reserved (BYPASS) Reserved (BYPASS) Reserved for future RISC-V debugging 0x130x14Reserved (BYPASS) Reserved for future RISC-V debugging Reserved (BYPASS) Reserved for future RISC-V standards 0x15Reserved for future RISC-V standards 0x16Reserved (BYPASS) Reserved (BYPASS) Reserved for future RISC-V standards 0x170x1f**BYPASS** JTAG requires this encoding

Table 6.1: JTAG DTM TAP Registers

#### 6.1.3 IDCODE (at 0x01)

This register is selected (in IR) when the TAP state machine is reset. Its definition is exactly as defined in IEEE Std 1149.1-2013.

This entire register is read-only.

| 31  | 28   | 27    | 12    | 11   | 1    | 0 |
|-----|------|-------|-------|------|------|---|
| Ver | sion | PartN | umber | Manı | ıfld | 1 |
| -   | 4    | 1     | .6    | 11   |      | 1 |

| Field      | Description   | Access | Reset  |
|------------|---|--------|--------|
| Version    | Identifies the release version of this part.        | R      | Preset |
| PartNumber | Identifies the designer's part number of this part. | R      | Preset |
| Manufld    | Identifies the designer/manufacturer of this part.  | R      | Preset |
|            | Bits 6:0 must be bits 6:0 of the designer/manufac-  |        |        |
|            | turer's Identification Code as assigned by JEDEC    |        |        |
|            | Standard JEP106. Bits 10:7 contain the modulo-      |        |        |
|            | 16 count of the number of continuation characters   |        |        |
|            | (0x7f) in that same Identification Code.            |        |        |

# 6.1.4 DTM Control and Status (dtmcs, at 0x10)

The size of this register will remain constant in future versions so that a debugger can always determine the version of the DTM.

|   | 31 18 |    | 17           | 16       | 15 | 14 | 12 | 11  | 10   | 9   | 4   | 3    | 0    |  |
|---|-------|----|--------------|----------|----|----|----|-----|------|-----|-----|------|------|--|
| 0 |       | 0  | dmihardreset | dmireset | 0  | id | le | dmi | stat | abi | its | vers | sion |  |
|   |       | 14 | 1            | 1        | 1  | :  | 3  | 2   | 2    | 6   | 5   | 4    | 1    |  |

| Field        | Description  | Access | Reset  |
|--------------|--|--------|--------|
| dmihardreset | Writing 1 to this bit does a hard reset of the DTM,  | W1     | -      |
|              | causing the DTM to forget about any outstand-        |        |        |
|              | ing DMI transactions, and returning all registers    |        |        |
|              | and internal state to their reset value. In gen-     |        |        |
|              | eral this should only be used when the Debugger      |        |        |
|              | has reason to expect that the outstanding DMI        |        |        |
|              | transaction will never complete (e.g. a reset con-   |        |        |
|              | dition caused an inflight DMI transaction to be      |        |        |
|              | cancelled).  |        |        |
| dmireset     | Writing 1 to this bit clears the sticky error state, | W1     | -      |
|              | but does not affect outstanding DMI transactions.    |        |        |
| idle         | This is a hint to the debugger of the minimum        | R      | Preset |
|              | number of cycles a debugger should spend in Run-     |        |        |
|              | Test/Idle after every DMI scan to avoid a 'busy'     |        |        |
|              | return code (dmistat of 3). A debugger must still    |        |        |
|              | check dmistat when necessary.                        |        |        |
|              | 0: It is not necessary to enter Run-Test/Idle at     |        |        |
|              | all.   |        |        |
|              | 1: Enter Run-Test/Idle and leave it immediately.     |        |        |
|              | 2: Enter Run-Test/Idle and stay there for 1 cycle    |        |        |
|              | before leaving.                                      |        |        |
|              | And so on.   |        |        |
| dmistat      | Read-only alias of op.                               | R      | 0      |
| abits        | The size of address in dmi.                          | R      | Preset |

| Field   | Description                                       | Access | Reset |
|---------|---|--------|-------|
| version | 0 (0.11): Version described in spec version 0.11. | R      | 1     |
|         | 1 (1.0): Version described in spec versions 0.13  |        |       |
|         | and 1.0.  |        |       |
|         | 15 (custom): Version not described in any avail-  |        |       |
|         | able version of this spec.                        |        |       |

#### 6.1.5 Debug Module Interface Access (dmi, at 0x11)

This register allows access to the Debug Module Interface (DMI).

In Update-DR, the DTM starts the operation specified in op unless the current status reported in op is sticky.

In Capture-DR, the DTM updates data with the result from that operation, updating op if the current op isn't sticky.

See Section B.2.1 for examples of how this is used.

The still-in-progress status is sticky to accommodate debuggers that batch together a number of scans, which must all be executed or stop as soon as there's a problem.

For instance a series of scans may write a Debug Program and execute it. If one of the writes fails but the execution continues, then the Debug Program may hang or have other unexpected side effects.

| abits+33 | 34 | 33 |      | 2 | 1 | 0 |
|----------|----|----|------|---|---|---|
| address  |    |    | data |   | 0 | p |
| abits    |    |    | 32   |   | 2 | 2 |

| Field   | Description                                    | Access | Reset |
|---------|--|--------|-------|
| address | Address used for DMI access. In Update-DR this | R/W    | 0     |
|         | value is used to access the DM over the DMI.   |        |       |
| data    | The data to send to the DM over the DMI during | R/W    | 0     |
|         | Update-DR, and the data returned from the DM   |        |       |
|         | as a result of the previous operation.         |        |       |

| Field | Description  | Access | Reset |
|-------|--|--------|-------|
| ор    | When the debugger writes this field, it has the      | R/W    | 0     |
|       | following meaning:                                   |        |       |
|       | 0 (nop): Ignore data and address.                    |        |       |
|       | Don't send anything over the DMI during              |        |       |
|       | Update-DR. This operation should never result in     |        |       |
|       | a busy or error response. The address and data       |        |       |
|       | reported in the following Capture-DR are unde-       |        |       |
|       | fined.   |        |       |
|       | This operation leaves the values in address and      |        |       |
|       | data UNSPECIFIED.                                    |        |       |
|       | 1 (read): Read from address.                         |        |       |
|       | When this operation succeeds, address contains       |        |       |
|       | the address that was read from, and data contains    |        |       |
|       | the value that was read.                             |        |       |
|       | 2 (write): Write data to address.                    |        |       |
|       | This operation leaves the values in address and      |        |       |
|       | data UNSPECIFIED.                                    |        |       |
|       | 3 (reserved): Reserved.                              |        |       |
|       | When the debugger reads this field, it means the     |        |       |
|       | following:   |        |       |
|       | 0 (success): The previous operation completed        |        |       |
|       | successfully.  |        |       |
|       | 1 (reserved): Reserved.                              |        |       |
|       | 2 (failed): A previous operation failed. The data    |        |       |
|       | scanned into dmi in this access will be ignored.     |        |       |
|       | This status is sticky and can be cleared by writing  |        |       |
|       | dmireset in dtmcs.                                   |        |       |
|       | This indicates that the DM itself responded with     |        |       |
|       | an error. There are no specified cases in which      |        |       |
|       | the DM would respond with an error, and DMI is       |        |       |
|       | not required to support returning errors.            |        |       |
|       | 3 (busy): An operation was attempted while a         |        |       |
|       | DMI request is still in progress. The data scanned   |        |       |
|       | into dmi in this access will be ignored. This status |        |       |
|       | is sticky and can be cleared by writing dmireset in  |        |       |
|       | dtmcs. If a debugger sees this status, it needs to   |        |       |
|       | give the target more TCK edges between Update-       |        |       |
|       | DR and Capture-DR. The simplest way to do that       |        |       |
|       | is to add extra transitions in Run-Test/Idle.        |        |       |

# 6.1.6 BYPASS (at 0x1f)

1-bit register that has no effect. It is used when a debugger does not want to communicate with this TAP.

This entire register is read-only.

0

#### 6.1.7 Recommended JTAG Connector

To make it easy to acquire debug hardware, this spec recommends a connector that is compatible with the MIPI-10 .05 inch connector specification, as described in the MIPI Alliance Recommendation for Debug and Trace Connectors, Version 1.10.00, 16 March 2011.

The connector has .05 inch spacing, gold-plated male header with .016 inch thick hardened copper or beryllium bronze square posts (SAMTEC FTSH or equivalent). Female connectors are compatible  $20\mu m$  gold connectors.

Viewing the male header from above (the pins pointing at your eye), a target's connector looks as it does in Table 6.5. The function of each pin is described in Table 6.7.

Table 6.5: MIPI-10 Connector Diagram

| VREF DEBUG | 1 | 2  | TMS    |
|------------|---|----|--------|
| GND        | 3 | 4  | TCK    |
| GND        | 5 | 6  | TDO    |
| GND or KEY | 7 | 8  | TDI    |
| GND        | 9 | 10 | nRESET |

If a hardware platform requires nTRST then it is permissible to reuse the nRESET pin as the nTRST signal. If a hardware platform requires both hardware platform reset and TAP reset, the MIPI-20 connector should be used. Its physical connector is virtually identical to MIPI-10, except that it's twice as long, supporting twice as many pins. Its connector is show in Table 6.6.

Table 6.6: MIPI-20 Connector Diagram

| VREF DEBUG | 1  | 2  | TMS      |
|------------|----|----|----------|
| GND        | 3  | 4  | TCK      |
| GND        | 5  | 6  | TDO      |
| GND or KEY | 7  | 8  | TDI      |
| GND        | 9  | 10 | nRESET   |
| GND        | 11 | 12 | RTCK     |
| GND        | 13 | 14 | nTRST_PD |
| GND        | 15 | 16 | nTRST    |
| GND        | 17 | 18 | TRIGIN   |
| GND        | 19 | 20 | TRIGOUT  |

The same connectors can be used for 2-wire cJTAG. In that case TMS is used for TMSC, and TCK is used for TCKC.

Table 6.7: JTAG Connector Pinout

| 1  | VREF DEBUG | Reference voltage for logic high.                      |  |  |
|----|------------|--|--|--|
| 2  | TMS        | JTAG TMS signal, driven by the debug adapter.          |  |  |
| 4  | TCK        | JTAG TCK signal, driven by the debug adapter.          |  |  |
| 6  | TDO        | JTAG TDO signal, driven by the target.                 |  |  |
| 7  | GND or KEY | This pin may be cut on the male and plugged on the     |  |  |
|    |            | female header to ensure the header is always plugged   |  |  |
|    |            | in correctly. It is, however, recommended to use this  |  |  |
|    |            | pin as an additional ground, to allow for fastest TCK  |  |  |
|    |            | speeds. A shrouded connector should be used to         |  |  |
|    |            | prevent the cable from being plugged in incorrectly.   |  |  |
| 8  | TDI        | JTAG TDI signal, driven by the debug adapter.          |  |  |
| 10 | nRESET     | Active-low reset signal, driven by the debug adapter.  |  |  |
|    |            | Asserting reset should reset any RISC-V cores as well  |  |  |
|    |            | as any other peripherals on the PCB. It should not     |  |  |
|    |            | reset the debug logic. This pin is optional but        |  |  |
|    |            | strongly encouraged.                                   |  |  |
|    |            | If necessary, this pin could be used as nTRST instead. |  |  |
|    |            | nRESET should never be connected to the TAP reset,     |  |  |
|    |            | otherwise the debugger might not be able to debug      |  |  |
|    |            | through a reset to discover the cause of a crash or to |  |  |
|    |            | maintain execution control after the reset.            |  |  |
| 12 | RTCK       | Return test clock, driven by the target. A target may  |  |  |
|    |            | relay the TCK signal here once it has processed it,    |  |  |
|    |            | allowing a debugger to adjust its TCK frequency in     |  |  |
|    |            | response.  |  |  |
| 14 | nTRST_PD   | Test reset pull-down (optional), driven by the debug   |  |  |
|    |            | adapter. Same function as nTRST, but with              |  |  |
|    |            | pull-down resistor on target.                          |  |  |
| 16 | nTRST      | Test reset (optional), driven by the debug adapter.    |  |  |
|    |            | Used to reset the JTAG TAP Controller.                 |  |  |
| 18 | TRIGIN     | Not used by this specification, to be driven by debug  |  |  |
|    |            | adapter. (Can be used for extended functions like      |  |  |
|    |            | UART or boot mode selection by some debug              |  |  |
|    |            | adapters).   |  |  |
| 20 | TRIGOUT    | Not used by this specification, driven by the target.  |  |  |

### Appendix A

## Hardware Implementations

Below are two possible implementations. A designer could choose one, mix and match, or come up with their own design.

#### A.1 Abstract Command Based

Halting happens by stalling the hart execution pipeline.

Muxes on the register file(s) allow for accessing GPRs and CSRs using the Access Register abstract command.

Memory is accessed using the Abstract Access Memory command or through System Bus Access.

This implementation could allow a debugger to collect information from the hart even when that hart is unable to execute instructions.

#### A.2 Execution Based

This implementation only implements the Access Register abstract command for GPRs on a halted hart, and relies on the Program Buffer for all other operations. It uses the hart's existing pipeline and ability to execute from arbitrary memory locations to avoid modifications to a hart's datapath.

When the halt request bit is set, the Debug Module raises a special interrupt to the selected harts. This interrupt causes each hart to enter Debug Mode and jump to a defined memory region that is serviced by the DM and is only accessible to the harts in Debug Mode. When taking this trap, pc is saved to dpc and cause is updated in dcsr.

The code in the Debug Module causes the hart to execute a "park loop." In the park loop the hart writes its mhartid to a memory location within the Debug Module to indicate that it is halted. To allow the DM to individually control one out of several halted harts, each hart polls for flags in a DM-controlled memory location to determine whether the debugger wants it to execute the

Program Buffer or perform a resume.

To execute an abstract command, the DM first populates some internal words of program buffer according to command. When transfer is set, the DM populates these words with lw <gpr>, 0x400(zero) or sw 0x400(zero), <gpr>. 64- and 128-bit accesses use ld/sd and lq/sq respectively. If transfer is not set, the DM populates these instructions as nops. If execute is set, execution continues to the debugger-controlled Program Buffer, otherwise the DM causes a ebreak to execute immediately.

When ebreak is executed (indicating the end of the Program Buffer code) the hart returns to its park loop. If an exception is encountered, the hart jumps to a debug trap address within the Debug Module. The code there causes the hart to write to the Debug Module indicating an exception. Then the hart jumps back to the park loop. The DM infers from the write that there was an exception, and sets cmderr appropriately. Typically the hart will execute a fence instruction before entering the park loop, to ensure that any effects from the abstract command, such as a write to data0, take effect before the DM returns busy to 0.

To resume execution, the debug module sets a flag which causes the hart to execute a **dret**. **dret** is an instruction that only has meaning while in Debug Mode and not executing from the Program Buffer. Its recommended encoding is 0x7b200073. When **dret** is executed, **pc** is restored from **dpc** and normal execution resumes at the privilege set by **prv**.

data0 etc. are mapped into regular memory at an address relative to zero with only a 12-bit imm. The exact address is an implementation detail that a debugger must not rely on. For example, the data registers might be mapped to 0x400.

For additional flexibility, progbuf0, etc. are mapped into regular memory immediately preceding data0, in order to form a contiguous region of memory which can be used for either program execution or data transfer.

The PMP must not disallow fetches, loads, or stores in the address range associated with the Debug Module when the hart is in Debug Mode, regardless of how the PMP is configured. The same is true of PMA. Without this guarantee, the park loop would enter an infinite loop of traps and debug would not be possible.

#### A.3 Debug Module Interface Signals

As stated in section 3.1 the details of the DMI are left to the system designer. It is quite often the case that only one DTM and one DM is implemented. In this case it might be useful to comply with the signals suggested in table A.1, which is the implementation used in the open-source rocket-chip RISC-V core.

The DTM can start a request when the DM sets REQ\_READY to 1. When this is the case REQ\_OP can be set to 1 for a read or 2 for a write request. The desired address is driven with the REQ\_ADDRESS signal. Finally REQ\_VALID is set high, indicating to the DM that a valid request is pending.

The DM must respond to a request from the DTM when RSP\_READY is high. The status of

the response is indicated by the RSP\_OP signal (see op). The data of the response is driven to RSP\_DATA. A pending response is signalled by setting RSP\_VALID.

| Signal      | Width | Source | Description   |
|-------------|-------|--------|---|
| REQ_VALID   | 1     | DTM    | Indicates that a valid request is pending           |
| REQ_READY   | 1     | DM     | Indicates that the DM is able to process a request  |
| REQ_ADDRESS | abits | DTM    | Requested address                                   |
| REQ_DATA    | 32    | DTM    | Requested data                                      |
| REQ_OP      | 2     | DTM    | Same meaning as the op field                        |
| RSP_VALID   | 1     | DM     | Indicates that a valid respond is pending           |
| RSP_READY   | 1     | DTM    | Indicates that the DTM is able to process a respond |
| RSP_DATA    | 32    | DM     | Response data                                       |
| RSP_OP      | 2     | DM     | Same meaning as the op field                        |
|             |       |        |   |

Table A.1: Signals for the suggested DMI between one DTM and one DM

### Appendix B

## Debugger Implementation

#### B.1 C Header File

https://github.com/riscv/riscv-debug-spec contains instructions for generating a C header file that defines macros for every field in every register/abstract command mentioned in this document.

#### **B.2** External Debugger Implementation

This section details how an external debugger might use the described debug interface to perform some common operations on RISC-V cores using the JTAG DTM described in Section 6.1. All these examples assume a 32-bit core but it should be easy to adapt the examples to 64- or 128-bit cores.

To keep the examples readable, they all assume that everything succeeds, and that they complete faster than the debugger can perform the next access. This will be the case in a typical JTAG setup. However, the debugger must always check the sticky error status bits after performing a sequence of actions. If it sees any that are set, then it should attempt the same actions again, possibly while adding in some delay, or explicit checks for status bits.

#### **B.2.1** Debug Module Interface Access

To read an arbitrary Debug Module register, select dmi, and scan in a value with op set to 1, and address set to the desired register address. In Update-DR the operation will start, and in Capture-DR its results will be captured into data. If the operation didn't complete in time, op will be 3 and the value in data must be ignored. The busy condition must be cleared by writing dmireset in dtmcs, and then the second scan scan must be performed again. This process must be repeated until op returns 0. In later operations the debugger should allow for more time between Update-DR and Capture-DR.

To write an arbitrary Debug Bus register, select dmi, and scan in a value with op set to 2, and

address and data set to the desired register address and data respectively. From then on everything happens exactly as with a read, except that a write is performed instead of the read.

It should almost never be necessary to scan IR, avoiding a big part of the inefficiency in typical JTAG use.

#### B.2.2 Checking for Halted Harts

A user will want to know as quickly as possible when a hart is halted (e.g. due to a breakpoint). To efficiently determine which harts are halted when there are many harts, the debugger uses the haltsum registers. Assuming the maximum number of harts exist, first it checks haltsum3. For each bit set there, it writes hartsel, and checks haltsum2. This process repeats through haltsum1 and haltsum0. Depending on how many harts exist, the process should start at one of the lower haltsum registers.

#### B.2.3 Halting

To halt one or more harts, the debugger selects them, sets haltreq, and then waits for allhalted to indicate the harts are halted. Then it can clear haltreq to 0, or leave it high to catch a hart that resets while halted.

#### B.2.4 Running

First, the debugger should restore any registers that it has overwritten. Then it can let the selected harts run by setting resumereq. Once allresumeack is set, the debugger knows the hart has resumed, and it can clear resumereq. Harts might halt very quickly after resuming (e.g. by hitting a software breakpoint) so the debugger cannot use allhalted/anyhalted to check whether the hart resumed.

#### B.2.5 Single Step

Using the hardware single step feature is almost the same as regular running. The debugger just sets **step** in **dcsr** before letting the hart run. The hart behaves exactly as in the running case, except that interrupts may be disabled (depending on **stepie**) and it only fetches and executes a single instruction before re-entering Debug Mode.

#### B.2.6 Accessing Registers

#### B.2.6.1 Using Abstract Command

Read s0 using abstract command:

| Op    | Address | Value                          | Comment                      |
|-------|---------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Write | command | aarsize = 2, transfer, regno = | Read s0                      |
|       |         | 0x1008                         |                              |
| Read  | data0   | -                              | Returns value that was in so |

Write mstatus using abstract command:

| Op    | Address | Value                         | Comment       |
|-------|---------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| Write | data0   | new value                     |               |
| Write | command | aarsize = 2, transfer, write, | Write mstatus |
|       |         | $regno = 0 \mathbf{x} 300$    |               |

#### B.2.6.2 Using Program Buffer

Abstract commands are used to exchange data with GPRs. Using this mechanism, other registers can be accessed by moving their value into/out of GPRs.

Write mstatus using program buffer:

| Op    | Address  | Value                            | Comment                     |
|-------|----------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Write | progbuf0 | csrw s0, MSTATUS                 |                             |
| Write | progbuf1 | ebreak                           |                             |
| Write | data0    | new value                        |                             |
| Write | command  | aarsize = 2, postexec, transfer, | Write so, then execute pro- |
|       |          | write, regno = $0x1008$          | gram buffer                 |

#### Read f1 using program buffer:

| Op    | Address  | Value                      | Comment                       |
|-------|----------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Write | progbuf0 | fmv.x.s s0, f1             |                               |
| Write | progbuf1 | ebreak                     |                               |
| Write | command  | postexec                   | Execute program buffer        |
| Write | command  | transfer, regno = $0x1008$ | read s0                       |
| Read  | data0    | -                          | Returns the value that was in |
|       |          |                            | f1                            |

#### B.2.7 Reading Memory

#### B.2.7.1 Using System Bus Access

With system bus access, addresses are physical system bus addresses.

Read a word from memory using system bus access:

| Op    | Address    | Value                        | Comment                |
|-------|------------|------------------------------|------------------------|
| Write | sbcs       | sbaccess = 2, $sbreadonaddr$ | Setup                  |
| Write | sbaddress0 | address                      |                        |
| Read  | sbdata0    | -                            | Value read from memory |

Read block of memory using system bus access:

| Op    | Address    | Value                          | Comment                                     |
|-------|------------|--------------------------------|---|
| Write | sbcs       | sbaccess = 2, $sbreadonaddr$ , | Turn on autoread and autoincrement          |
|       |            | sbreadondata, sbautoincrement  |   |
| Write | sbaddress0 | address                        | Writing address triggers read and increment |
| Read  | sbdata0    | -                              | Value read from memory                      |
| Read  | sbdata0    | -                              | Next value read from memory                 |
|       |            |                                |   |
| Write | sbcs       | 0                              | Disable autoread                            |
| Read  | sbdata0    | -                              | Get last value read from memory.            |

#### B.2.7.2 Using Program Buffer

Through the Program Buffer, the hart performs the memory accesses. Addresses are physical or virtual (depending on mprven and other system configuration).

Read a word from memory using program buffer:

| Op    | Address  | Value                    | Comment                     |
|-------|----------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Write | progbuf0 | lw s0, 0(s0)             |                             |
| Write | progbuf1 | ebreak                   |                             |
| Write | data0    | address                  |                             |
| Write | command  | write, postexec, regno = | Write s0, then execute pro- |
|       |          | 0x1008                   | gram buffer                 |
| Write | command  | regno = 0 x 1008         | Read s0                     |
| Read  | data0    | -                        | Value read from memory      |

Read block of memory using program buffer:

| Op    | Address      | Value                             | Comment  |
|-------|--------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Write | progbuf0     | lw s1, 0(s0)                      |  |
| Write | progbuf1     | addi s0, s0, 4                    |  |
| Write | progbuf2     | ebreak                            |  |
| Write | data0        | address                           |  |
| Write | command      | write, postexec, regno = $0x1008$ | Write s0, then execute program buffer                                |
| Write | command      | postexec, regno = 0x1009          | Read s1, then execute program buffer                                 |
| Write | abstractauto | autoexecdata [0]                  | Set autoexecdata [0]   |
| Read  | data0        | -                                 | Get value read from memory,<br>then execute program buffer           |
| Read  | data0        | -                                 | Get next value read from<br>memory, then execute pro-<br>gram buffer |
|       |              |                                   |  |
| Write | abstractauto | 0                                 | Clear autoexecdata [0]   |
| Read  | data0        | -                                 | Get last value read from memory.                                     |

#### B.2.7.3 Using Abstract Memory Access

Abstract memory accesses act as if they are performed by the hart, although the actual implementation may differ.

Read a word from memory using abstract memory access:

| Op    | Address | Value                 | Comment                |
|-------|---------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| Write | data1   | address               |                        |
| Write | command | cmdtype=2, aamsize =2 |                        |
| Read  | data0   | -                     | Value read from memory |

Read block of memory using abstract memory access:

| Op    | Address      | Value                     | Comment                       |
|-------|--------------|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Write | abstractauto | 1                         | Re-execute the command        |
|       |              |                           | when data0 is accessed        |
| Write | data1        | address                   |                               |
| Write | command      | cmdtype=2, $aamsize =2$ , |                               |
|       |              | aampostincrement = 1      |                               |
| Read  | data0        | -                         | Read value, and trigger read- |
|       |              |                           | ing of next address           |
|       |              |                           |                               |
| Write | abstractauto | 0                         | Disable auto-exec             |
| Read  | data0        | -                         | Get last value read from      |
|       |              |                           | memory.                       |

#### B.2.8 Writing Memory

#### B.2.8.1 Using System Bus Access

With system bus access, addresses are physical system bus addresses.

Write a word to memory using system bus access:

| Op    | Address    | Value        | Comment               |
|-------|------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| Write | sbcs       | sbaccess = 2 | Configure access size |
| Write | sbaddress0 | address      |                       |
| Write | sbdata0    | value        |                       |

Write a block of memory using system bus access:

| Op    | Address    | Value                           | Comment               |
|-------|------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Write | sbcs       | sbaccess = 2, $sbautoincrement$ | Turn on autoincrement |
| Write | sbaddress0 | address                         |                       |
| Write | sbdata0    | value0                          |                       |
| Write | sbdata0    | value1                          |                       |
| •••   |            |                                 |                       |
| Write | sbdata0    | valueN                          |                       |

#### B.2.8.2 Using Program Buffer

Through the Program Buffer, the hart performs the memory accesses. Addresses are physical or virtual (depending on mprven and other system configuration).

Write a word to memory using program buffer:

| Op    | Address  | Value                    | Comment                     |
|-------|----------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Write | progbuf0 | sw s1, 0(s0)             |                             |
| Write | progbuf1 | ebreak                   |                             |
| Write | data0    | address                  |                             |
| Write | command  | write, regno = $0x1008$  | Write s0                    |
| Write | data0    | value                    |                             |
| Write | command  | write, postexec, regno = | Write s1, then execute pro- |
|       |          | 0x1009                   | gram buffer                 |

Write block of memory using program buffer:

| Op    | Address      | Value                        | Comment                     |
|-------|--------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Write | progbuf0     | sw s1, 0(s0)                 |                             |
| Write | progbuf1     | addi s0, s0, 4               |                             |
| Write | progbuf2     | ebreak                       |                             |
| Write | data0        | address                      |                             |
| Write | command      | write, regno = $0x1008$      | Write s0                    |
| Write | data0        | value0                       |                             |
| Write | command      | write, postexec, regno =     | Write s1, then execute pro- |
|       |              | 0x1009                       | gram buffer                 |
| Write | abstractauto | autoexecdata $\left[0 ight]$ | Set autoexecdata [0]        |
| Write | data0        | value1                       |                             |
|       |              |                              |                             |
| Write | data0        | valueN                       |                             |
| Write | abstractauto | 0                            | Clear autoexecdata [0]      |

#### B.2.8.3 Using Abstract Memory Access

Abstract memory accesses act as if they are performed by the hart, although the actual implementation may differ.

Write a word to memory using abstract memory access:

| Op    | Address | Value      |         |     | Comment |
|-------|---------|------------|---------|-----|---------|
| Write | data1   | address    |         |     |         |
| Write | data0   | value      |         |     |         |
| Write | command | cmdtype=2, | aamsize | =2, |         |
|       |         | write=1    |         |     |         |

Write a block of memory using abstract memory access:

| Op    | Address      | Value                      | Comment                |
|-------|--------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| Write | data1        | address                    |                        |
| Write | data0        | value0                     |                        |
| Write | command      | cmdtype=2, $aamsize = 2$ , |                        |
|       |              | write=1, aampostincrement  |                        |
|       |              | =1                         |                        |
| Write | abstractauto | 1                          | Re-execute the command |
|       |              |                            | when data0 is accessed |
| Write | data0        | value1                     |                        |
| Write | data0        | value2                     |                        |
|       |              |                            |                        |
| Write | data0        | valueN                     |                        |
| Write | abstractauto | 0                          | Disable auto-exec      |

#### B.2.9 Triggers

A debugger can use hardware triggers to halt a hart when a certain event occurs. Below are some examples, but as there is no requirement on the number of features of the triggers implemented by a hart, these examples might not be applicable to all implementations. When a debugger wants to set a trigger, it writes the desired configuration, and then reads back to see if that configuration is supported.

Enter Debug Mode just before the instruction at 0x80001234 is executed, to be used as an instruction breakpoint in ROM:

| tdata1 | 0x105c     | action=1, match=0, m=1, s=1, u=1, execute=1 |
|--------|------------|---|
| tdata2 | 0x80001234 | address                                     |

Enter Debug Mode right after the value at 0x80007f80 is read:

| tdata1 | 0x4159     | timing=1, action=1, match=0, m=1, s=1, u=1, |
|--------|------------|---|
|        |            | load=1                                      |
| tdata2 | 0x80007f80 | address                                     |

Enter Debug Mode right before a write to an address between 0x80007c80 and 0x80007cef (inclusive):

| tdata1 0 | 0x195a     | action=1, chain=1, match=2, m=1, s=1, u=1, |
|----------|------------|--|
|          |            | store=1                                    |
| tdata2 0 | 0x80007c80 | start address (inclusive)                  |
| tdata1 1 | 0x11da     | action=1, match=3, m=1, s=1, u=1, store=1  |
| tdata2 1 | 0x80007cf0 | end address (exclusive)                    |

Enter Debug Mode right before a write to an address between 0x81230000 and 0x8123ffff (inclusive):

| tdata1 | 0x10da     | action=1, match=1, m=1, s=1, u=1, store=1        |
|--------|------------|--|
| tdata2 | 0x81237fff | 16 bits to match exactly, then 0, then all ones. |

Enter Debug Mode right after a read from an address between 0x86753090 and 0x8675309f or between 0x96753090 and 0x9675309f (inclusive):

| tdata1 0 | 0x41a59    | timing=1, action=1, chain=1, match=4, m=1, s=1, |
|----------|------------|---|
|          |            | u=1, load=1                                     |
| tdata2 0 | 0xfff03090 | Mask for low half, then match for low half      |
| tdata1 1 | 0x412d9    | timing=1, action=1, match=5, m=1, s=1, u=1,     |
|          |            | load=1  |
| tdata2 1 | 0xefff8675 | Mask for high half, then match for high half    |

#### **B.2.10** Handling Exceptions

Generally the debugger can avoid exceptions by being careful with the programs it writes. Sometimes they are unavoidable though, e.g. if the user asks to access memory or a CSR that is not implemented. A typical debugger will not know enough about the hardware platform to know what's going to happen, and must attempt the access to determine the outcome.

When an exception occurs while executing the Program Buffer, cmderr becomes set. The debugger can check this field to see whether a program encountered an exception. If there was an exception, it's left to the debugger to know what must have caused it.

#### B.2.11 Quick Access

There are a variety of instructions to transfer data between GPRs and the data registers. They are either loads/stores or CSR reads/writes. The specific addresses also vary. This is all specified in hartinfo. The examples here use the pseudo-op transfer dest, src to represent all these options.

Halt the hart for a minimum amount of time to perform a single memory write:

| Op    | Address  | Value             | Comment                       |
|-------|----------|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| Write | progbuf0 | transfer arg2, s0 | Save s0                       |
| Write | progbuf1 | transfer s0, arg0 | Read first argument (address) |
| Write | progbuf2 | transfer arg0, s1 | Save s1                       |
| Write | progbuf3 | transfer s1, arg1 | Read second argument (data)   |
| Write | progbuf4 | sw s1, 0(s0)      |                               |
| Write | progbuf5 | transfer s1, arg0 | Restore s1                    |
| Write | progbuf6 | transfer s0, arg2 | Restore s0                    |
| Write | progbuf7 | ebreak            |                               |
| Write | data0    | address           |                               |
| Write | data1    | data              |                               |
| Write | command  | 0x10000000        | Perform quick access          |

This shows an example of setting the m bit in mcontrol to enable a hardware breakpoint in M-mode. Similar quick access instructions could have been used previously to configure the trigger that is being enabled here:

| Op    | Address  | Value                | Comment                        |
|-------|----------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Write | progbuf0 | transfer arg0, s0    | Save s0                        |
| Write | progbuf1 | li s0, (1 << 6)      | Form the mask for <b>m</b> bit |
| Write | progbuf2 | csrrs x0, tdata1, s0 | Apply the mask to mcontrol     |
| Write | progbuf3 | transfer s0, arg2    | Restore s0                     |
| Write | progbuf4 | ebreak               |                                |
| Write | command  | 0x10000000           | Perform quick access           |

#### **B.3** Native Debugger Implementation

The spec contains a few features to aid in writing a native debugger. This section describes how some common tasks might be achieved.

#### B.3.1 Single Step

Single step is straightforward if the OS or a debug stub runs in M-Mode while the program being debugged runs in a less privileged mode. When a step is required, the OS or debug stub writes count =1, action =0, m =0 before returning control to the lower user program with an mret instruction.

On tiny systems which only supports M-Mode single step is doable, but tricky to get right. To single step, the debug stub would execute something like:

```
li t0, \FcsrIcountCount=4, \FcsrIcountAction=0, \FcsrIcountM=1
csrw tdata1, t0  /* Write the trigger. */
lw t0, 8(sp)  /* Restore t0, count decrements to 3 */
lw sp, 0(sp)  /* Restore sp, count decrements to 2 */
mret  /* Return to program being debugged. count decrements to 1 */
```

## Index

|                                       | 10 01 00                 |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| aampostincrement, 22                  | cmdtype, 19–21, 38       |
| aamsize, 22                           | command, 37              |
| aamvirtual, 21                        | confstrptr0, 39          |
| aarpostincrement, 19                  | confstrptr1, 39          |
| aarsize, 19                           | confstrptr2, 39          |
| abits, 94                             | confstrptr3, 40          |
| abstractauto, 38                      | confstrptrvalid, 30      |
| abstractcs, 36                        | control, 38              |
| Access Memory, 20                     | count, 85                |
| Access Register, 18                   | custom, 49               |
| ackhavereset, 32                      | custom 0, 49             |
| ackunavail, 32                        |                          |
| action, 75, 81, 85, 87–89             | data, 48, 49, 67, 70, 95 |
| address, 46, 47, 95                   | data0, 40                |
| allhalted, 30                         | dataaccess, 35           |
| allhavereset, 29                      | dataaddr, 35             |
| allnonexistent, 29                    | datacount, 37            |
| allresumeack, 29                      | datasize, 35             |
| allrunning, 29                        | dcsr, 53                 |
| allunavail, 29                        | debugver, 54             |
| anyhalted, 30                         | dmactive, 34             |
| anyhavereset, 29                      | dmcontrol, 30            |
| anynonexistent, 29                    | dmcs2, 41                |
| anyresumeack, 29                      | dmexttrigger, 42         |
| anyrunning, 30                        | dmi, 95                  |
| anyunavail, 29                        | dmihardreset, 94         |
| authbusy, 30                          | dmireset, 94             |
| authdata, 41                          | dmistat, 94              |
| authenticated, 30                     | dmode, 67                |
| autoexecdata, 38                      | dmstatus, 28             |
| autoexecutata, 50 autoexecprogbuf, 38 | dpc, 57                  |
| autocaceprogram, oo                   | dscratch0, 58            |
| busy, 36                              | dscratch1, 58            |
| BYPASS, 96                            | dtmcs, 94                |
| 511166, 00                            | dellies, or              |
| cause, 56                             | ebreakm, 55              |
| chain, 75, 82                         | ebreaks, 55              |
| clrkeepalive, 32                      | ebreaku, 55              |
| clrresethaltreq, 33                   | ebreakvs, 54             |
| cmderr, 37                            | ebreakvu, 55             |
| ,                                     |                          |

| etrigger, 87           | mscontext, 70               |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| execute, 77, 84        | mte, 68                     |
| field, 6               | ndmreset, $33$              |
|                        | ndmresetpending, 29         |
| group, 42              | nextdm, 40                  |
| grouptype, 42          | nmi, 86                     |
| 1 1/ 01                | nmip, 57                    |
| haltreq, 31            | nscratch, 35                |
| haltsum0, 42           | inscrattori, oo             |
| haltsum1, 43           | op, 96                      |
| haltsum2, 43           | - '                         |
| haltsum3, 44           | PartNumber, 94              |
| hartinfo, 34           | pending, $85$               |
| hartreset, 32          | postexec, 19                |
| hartsel, 30            | priv, <u>58</u>             |
| hartselhi, 32          | progbuf0, 40                |
| hartsello, 32          | progbufsize, 36             |
| hasel, 32              | prv, 57, 59                 |
| hasresethaltreq, 30    | 1 / /                       |
| hawindow, 36           | Quick Access, 20            |
| hawindowsel, 35, 36    |                             |
| hcontext, 69           | m regno,  20                |
| hgselect, 42           | relaxed priv, 37            |
| hgwrite, 42            | resethaltreq, $31$          |
| hit, 72, 79, 85–87, 89 | resume ack bit, $15$ , $29$ |
|                        | resumereq, $31$             |
| icount, 84             |                             |
| IDCODE, 93             | s, 76, 83, 85, 86, 88       |
| idle, 94               | sbaccess, 45                |
| impebreak, 29          | sbaccess 128, 45            |
| info, 68               | sbaccess16, 46              |
| intctl, 89             | sbaccess 32, 46             |
| itrigger, 85           | sbaccess64, 46              |
| Ironnaliwa 21          | sbaccess8, 46               |
| keepalive, 31          | sbaddress0, 46              |
| load, 77, 84           | sbaddress1, 46              |
|                        | sbaddress2, 47              |
| m, 76, 83, 85, 86, 88  | sbaddress3, 47              |
| Manufld, 94            | sbasize, 45                 |
| maskmax, 71            | sbautoincrement, 45         |
| match, 76, 83          | sbbusy, $45$                |
| mcontext, 70           | sbbusyerror, 44             |
| mcontrol, 70           | $\mathrm{sbcs},44$          |
| mcontrol6, 77          | sbdata0, 47                 |
| mhselect, 90           | sbdata1, 48                 |
| mhvalue, 89            | sbdata2, 49                 |
| mprven, 56             | sbdata3, 49                 |
| mpte, 68               | sberror, 45                 |
| <del>-</del> ,         | ,                           |

```
sbreadonaddr, 45
sbreadondata, 45
sbversion, 44
sbytemask, 90, 91
\rm scontext,\, 69
select, 72, 79, 89
setkeepalive, 32
setresethaltreq, 33
shortname, 6
size, 81
sizehi, 71
sizelo, 74
sselect, 90
step, 57
stepie, 55
stickyunavail, 29
stopcount, 55
stoptime, 56
store, 77, 84
svalue, 90
target-specific, 22
tcontrol, 68
tdata1, 65
tdata2, 67
tdata3, 67
textra32, 89
textra64, 90
timing, 73, 80
tinfo, 68
tmexttrigger, 88
transfer, 20
tselect, 65
type, 66
u, 76, 84, 85, 87, 88
v, 56, 59
Version, 94
version, 30, 95
vs, 78, 85–87
vu, 78, 85, 86, 88
```

write, 20, 22

## Appendix C

# Change Log

| Revision | Date       | Author(s)    | Description  |
|----------|------------|--------------|--|
| c4f872b  | 2022-11-29 | Paul Donahue | Low bit of dpc is read-only.                           |
| e481f91  | 2022-11-28 | Tim Newsome  | Improve Native Triggers formatting. (#777)             |
| 6e6cac1  | 2022-11-21 | Paul Donahue | Address #771 (#774)                                    |
| bd39106  | 2022-11-15 | Tim Newsome  | halt/resume groups don't apply to unavailable harts.   |
|          |            |              | (#764)   |
| d1c1f0e  | 2022-10-31 | Tim Newsome  | Clarify stoptime behavior. (#769)                      |
| 68aa0dc  | 2022-10-26 | Tim Newsome  | Dmode is still active for trigger type 15. (#768)      |
| 0e4d91e  | 2022-10-20 | Jan Matyas   | abstractcs.relaxedpriv: Clarify the description        |
|          |            |              | (#765)   |
| 1a39eb7  | 2022-10-19 | Tim Newsome  | dmi.data,address are unspecified after write/nop       |
|          |            |              | (#762)   |
| 8f396dc  | 2022-10-19 | Paul Donahue | More prominently say that moontrol is deprecated.      |
|          |            |              | (#759)   |
| 0250a06  | 2022-10-13 | Tim Newsome  | Rebuild PDF.   |
| 86e748a  | 2022-09-29 | Tim Newsome  | Clarify that PMP shouldn't prevent debug. (#758)       |
| aed6d27  | 2022-09-19 | Tim Newsome  | Clarify dcsr.cause when halt groups are used. (#752)   |
| 14a8d62  | 2022-09-12 | Tim Newsome  | Rebuild PDF.   |
| 9dc1ee4  | 2022-09-03 | YenHaoChen   | Clarify 'dmode is cleared' means 'the new value of     |
|          |            |              | dmode would be 0' ( $\#748$ )                          |
| d657b8a  | 2022-08-31 | Paul Donahue | Simplify definition of Minimal Debug Spec.             |
| 7882ff4  | 2022-08-31 | Paul Donahue | Minor wording change                                   |
| ed697a2  | 2022-08-30 | Paul Donahue | Change document title.                                 |
| 21706b1  | 2022-08-29 | Paul Donahue | Additional architecture review feedback. Fixed         |
|          |            |              | oddly-behaving link to DM chapter.                     |
| fe2a7f4  | 2022-08-29 | Tim Newsome  | Powers-¿Power in NAPOT definition.                     |
| c2a57e1  | 2022-08-29 | Tim Newsome  | Move contributors to preface.                          |
| fd97d9e  | 2022-08-29 | Tim Newsome  | Change preface warning for stable builds.              |
| b71e15d  | 2022-08-24 | Tim Newsome  | Elaborate on version detection. (#741)                 |
| d749752  | 2022-07-18 | Tim Newsome  | Remove license from debug_defines.h. (#743)            |
| 198ab7c  | 2022-06-27 | Tim Newsome  | Remove clarifying information that is false. $(\#740)$ |

| e5ce2b2     | 2022-06-16     | Paul Donahue | Fix order of states to be consistent with a few sentences earlier. (#738)   |
|-------------|----------------|--------------|---|
| 1744041     | 2022-06-17     | Yanqi Yang   | Clarify the current version in readme. (#739)                               |
| d401f57     | 2022-06-09     | Tim Newsome  | Rebuild PDF.  |
| c26287e     | 2022-06-09     | Paul Donahue | Change dcsr.cause priorities (#693)   |
| baaef96     | 2022-05-26     | Jiuyang Liu  | Add GitHub Action to auto release. (#733)                                   |
| 182b9c4     | 2022-05-20     | Tim Newsome  | List trigger actions described by the trace spec                            |
|             |                |              | (#734)  |
| c40847a     | 2022-05-20     | Tim Newsome  | Add trigger action values, for debug_defines.h. (#732)                      |
| efd25df     | 2022 - 05 - 19 | Tim Newsome  | Add field values to XML register description. $(\#727)$                     |
| 3ae76ea     | 2022 - 05 - 18 | Tim Newsome  | The program buffer may not be readable. $(#731)$                            |
| 42224a6     | 2022 - 05 - 16 | Tim Newsome  | Make data registers Message Registers. $(\#728)$                            |
| df943f2     | 2022 - 05 - 12 | Tim Newsome  | Describe debug_defines.h. (#729)  |
| 1c095fd     | 2022 - 05 - 12 | Tim Newsome  | Fix formatting error at the end of document. $(\#730)$                      |
| 9137a14     | 2022 - 05 - 11 | Tim Newsome  | Add arguments to C macros that need them. (#724)                            |
| 4c0859b     | 2022 - 05 - 11 | Tim Newsome  | mte/mpte apply only to breakpoint traps (#723)                              |
| 02a2793     | 2022-05-10     | Tim Newsome  | Tighten up language around icount matching. (#722)                          |
| 127e223     | 2022-05-10     | Tim Newsome  | Select and issue a command can be simultaneous                              |
|             |                |              | (#725)  |
| 8c22825     | 2022-05-09     | Tim Newsome  | Rebuild PDF.  |
| 17187e4     | 2022-04-26     | Tim Newsome  | Use trigger type 15 to indicate disabled. (#721)                            |
| 8705 fd 1   | 2022-04-22     | Paul Donahue | Clarifications/bug fixes: mscontext and tselect                             |
|             |                |              | (#702)  |
| 12a3eb6     | 2022-04-07     | Tim Newsome  | Rebuild PDF.  |
| abefdcf     | 2022-04-07     | Paul Donahue | Clarify behavior of low bits of tdata2 when match=1. (#680)                 |
| 191c8bf     | 2022-04-07     | Tim Newsome  | dtmcs.dmistat is a read-only alias of dmi.op. (#720)                        |
| 70bdd $3$ f | 2022-04-06     | Tim Newsome  | Define what 0 in register fields means. (#719)                              |
| 598d4eb     | 2022-04-01     | Paul Donahue | constrptr points to the configuration structure, not string. (#714)         |
| ab0341e     | 2022-04-01     | Paul Donahue | hawindow/hawindowsel are WARL (#715)  |
| eeef4d5     | 2022-03-29     | Paul Donahue | If masking is supported then tdata2 must be able to                         |
|             |                |              | hold all XLEN bits. (#716)  |
| 356 feb 1   | 2022-03-24     | Tim Newsome  | Fix contradiction in icount description. (#665)                             |
| 2676fa1     | 2022-03-24     | Tim Newsome  | Mention textra in the trigger types that it affects. (#711)                 |
| 3b16253     | 2022-03-24     | Tim Newsome  | Clarify writing to dmcs2.dmexttrigger. (#705)                               |
| 9c52c14     | 2022-03-22     | Tim Newsome  | Fix reset value of etrigger.type (#712)                                     |
| e9994d7     | 2022 - 03 - 21 | Tim Newsome  | Move nmi from etrigger to itrigger. (#709)                                  |
| 98203bb     | 2022-03-16     | Paul Donahue | Clarify tmexttrigger with action=0. (#707)                                  |
| 72ab3ae     | 2022-03-08     | Paul Donahue | ackunavail doesn't clear unavail on harts that are still unavailable (#706) |
| b659d7d     | 2022-02-10     | Tim Newsome  | Rebuild PDF.  |
| fe3d1e6     | 2022-02-09     | Tim Newsome  | Clarify partial abstract reg writes. (#704)                                 |
| 5b219ed     | 2022-02-08     | Tim Newsome  | Fix uses of \index macro. (#703)  |
| 6ea $272$ f | 2022-01-18     | Paul Donahue | Stoptime clarification per architecture review (#699)                       |

| 09441                       | 0000 01 10 | m· M                        | D 1 '11 DDE  |
|-----------------------------|------------|-----------------------------|--|
| e83441e                     | 2022-01-10 | Tim Newsome                 | Rebuild PDF.   |
| aa07a68                     | 2022-01-10 | Tim Newsome<br>Paul Donahue | Clarify that tdata1 is WARL (#701)                                   |
| f3323bb                     | 2022-01-07 | Paul Donanue                | Remove hoxe and some in the tentral, using Smstateen instead. (#700) |
| e350c4b                     | 2022-01-07 | Paul Donahue                | Define mtval behavior on action=0 triggers (#695)                    |
| 106 dd3c                    | 2021-12-29 | Paul Donahue                | "privilege level" -; "privilege mode" per architecture               |
|                             |            |                             | review feedback (#698)   |
| 337b8a5                     | 2021-12-29 | Paul Donahue                | Clarify behavior of writes to abstractauto while                     |
|                             |            |                             | busy=1 (#696)  |
| b187cff                     | 2021-12-16 | Paul Donahue                | Specify accessibility of mscontext (#694)                            |
| 92aef97                     | 2021-12-16 | Tim Newsome                 | Resume ack is set for any resume cause. (#692)                       |
| f7dcc8c                     | 2021-12-13 | Tim Newsome                 | Label Ztrigger and Zdebug chapters. (#669)                           |
| 3f44538                     | 2021-12-09 | Tim Newsome                 | Rebuild PDF.   |
| f3c0997                     | 2021-11-09 | Tim Newsome                 | autoexec* is the same as writing command (#685)                      |
| df0ea10                     | 2021-11-08 | Tim Newsome                 | Rebuild PDF.   |
| e3bd339                     | 2021-11-08 | Paul Donahue                | Fix obvious error in dcsr.cause=2 description.                       |
|                             |            |                             | (#681)   |
| 017e943                     | 2021-11-08 | Paul Donahue                | Debuggers may set action!=1 when clearing dmode                      |
|                             |            |                             | (#679)   |
| 3dfe4f7                     | 2021-10-26 | Paul Donahue                | Make mcontrol6.hit description consistent with                       |
|                             |            |                             | mcontrol.hit (#687)  |
| 42b8be9                     | 2021-10-20 | A.M                         | fixed wrong ref in Terminology section and rebuilt                   |
|                             |            |                             | PDF (#684)   |
| 1a72df3                     | 2021-10-07 | Tim Newsome                 | Rebuild PDF.   |
| b992bc5                     | 2021-10-07 | Paul Donahue                | Clarify that etrigger.nmi ignores vs and vu (not just                |
|                             |            |                             | m, s, u) (#676)  |
| 55c492d                     | 2021-09-17 | Paul Donahue                | Clarify ASID filtering (#667)  |
| 031 ff 77                   | 2021-09-15 | Tim Newsome                 | SBA write memory example: configure size $(\#673)$                   |
| 80563e2                     | 2021-09-14 | Tim Newsome                 | Run 'apt update' (#672)  |
| fc52dc5                     | 2021-09-14 | Tim Newsome                 | Don't call read/write CSRs read-only. (#668)                         |
| 57c1233                     | 2021-09-13 | Tim Newsome                 | Rebuild PDF.   |
| $6\mathrm{e}127\mathrm{fc}$ | 2021-08-16 | Paul Donahue                | Native triggers and reentrancy $(\#660)$                             |
| 6a9b355                     | 2021-08-13 | Tim Newsome                 | Clarify unused debug connector pins names/uses.                      |
|                             |            |                             | (#664)   |
| f77291e                     | 2021-08-12 | Tim Newsome                 | Rebuild PDF.   |
| 33cd3a6                     | 2021-08-10 | Paul Donahue                | Clarify dcsr.cause=2 (#663)  |
| 8f7873d                     | 2021-07-28 | Paul Donahue                | Clarify dpc for non-mcontrol triggers (#624)                         |
| 70e3db2                     | 2021-07-13 | Daniel Mangum               | Update link to mailing list in README.md (#658)                      |
| 63c985f                     | 2021-07-12 | Tim Newsome                 | Rebuild PDF.   |
| 9ac6506                     | 2021-07-08 | Paul Donahue                | xepc instead of exception PC (#654)                                  |
| e6b7b6c                     | 2021-07-08 | Tim Newsome                 | Clarify postincrement/transfer behavior. $(#655)$                    |
| f393a8d                     | 2021-07-08 | Daniel Mangum               | Fix small grammatical error in suggested DMI signals                 |
|                             |            |                             | (#656)   |
| d584f0f                     | 2021-07-08 | Tim Newsome                 | Attempt to build the document using github actions.                  |
|                             |            |                             | (#657)   |
| 022d62f                     | 2021-06-29 | Paul Donahue                | Clarify hstatus when the H extension isn't imple-                    |
|                             |            |                             | mented (#646)  |
| c391ffe                     | 2021-06-16 | Paul Donahue                | MPRV is in mstatus, not mcontrol. (#651)                             |

| a1e05fb   | 2021-06-14     | Paul Donahue | Clarify what happens to halted harts upon DM reset $(\#648)$          |
|-----------|----------------|--------------|---|
| 0f4ea2f   | 2021-06-10     | Tim Newsome  | Rebuild PDF.  |
| 641cd87   | 2021-06-09     | Tim Newsome  | Unselected harts may change groups when hgwrite=1 (#642)              |
| 55333c4   | 2021-06-09     | Tim Newsome  | hasel etc. are only ignored by abstract commands. $(\#643)$           |
| 3704486   | 2021-06-09     | Tim Newsome  | Mention license in debug_defines.h. (#641)                            |
| b68c265   | 2021-06-08     | Paul Donahue | Single stepping an instruction that fires a trigger $(\#622)$         |
| fdecf04   | 2021-06-08     | Tim Newsome  | Labels must come after (or in) their caption. (#640)                  |
| 5350603   | 2021-06-04     | Paul Donahue | Traps caused by action=0 triggers can be delegated via medeleg (#637) |
| 11 bf0 db | 2021-05-28     | Tim Newsome  | Divide the spec into ISA and non-ISA. (#635)                          |
| 3334910   | 2021-05-18     | Tim Newsome  | Further diagram update. $(#632)$                                      |
| b344c8f   | 2021 - 05 - 14 | Tim Newsome  | External debuggers should set dmode. (#634)                           |
| d9434bc   | 2021 - 05 - 14 | Paul Donahue | Fix #630 (#633)   |
| 39 fab4b  | 2021-05-10     | Tim Newsome  | Rebuild PDF.  |
| 090 eac8  | 2021-05-04     | Tim Newsome  | Update Run/Halt Debug State Machine. (#629)                           |
| 31a5f61   | 2021-04-08     | Tim Newsome  | Rebuild PDF.  |
| e3e408c   | 2021-03-25     | Paul Donahue | Clarify triggers (#628)   |
| e0e0b4d   | 2021-03-23     | Tim Newsome  | Remove latest draft link. $(\#627)$                                   |
| 1b665f3   | 2021-03-22     | Paul Donahue | clarify abstractauto (#625)   |
| 7242fe1   | 2021-03-17     | Paul Donahue | Clarify DM behavior for non-existent registers (#621)                 |
| 9ae7560   | 2021-03-10     | Paul Donahue | Fix minor typos $(\#620)$   |
| bd786dc   | 2021-02-08     | Tim Newsome  | Rebuild PDF.  |
| 132ffb8   | 2021-02-02     | Thomas Wicki | Clarify MCONTROL/MCONTROL6 'timing' description (#614)                |
| 075 de11  | 2021-02-02     | Paul Donahue | Clarify aarpostincrement wrapping (#613)                              |
| fb15173   | 2021-01-25     | Paul Donahue | hartsel and hasel are WARL $(\#612)$                                  |
| fcc2a33   | 2021-01-11     | Tim Newsome  | Rebuild PDF.  |
| 1b9caa1   | 2021-01-11     | Tim Newsome  | Define some more terms/acronyms. (#610)                               |
| 822f63b   | 2021-01-05     | Tim Newsome  | Move dret completely into the appendix. $(\#611)$                     |
| 57e271d   | 2020-12-30     | Tim Newsome  | Use A-mode instead of "A mode" consistently. (#609)                   |
| 08e072a   | 2020-12-29     | Ernie Edgar  | update version of priv spec to one with hypervisor (#608)             |
| bb578a4   | 2020-12-28     | Tim Newsome  | Clarify details around fence and progbuf. (#601)                      |
| 7e47254   | 2020-12-28     | Tim Newsome  | Rebuild PDF.  |
| 90ba168   | 2020-12-21     | Tim Newsome  | Clarify how many bits mcontrol/mcontrol6 compare. (#604)              |
| 27d735c   | 2020-12-18     | Tim Newsome  | Clarify maskmax corner cases. (#607)                                  |
| 2930c1d   | 2020-12-18     | Tim Newsome  | Clarify that ASID might come from satp or vsatp. (#606)               |
| c98d7e6   | 2020-12-18     | Tim Newsome  | Mark 1.0 as STABLE. $(\#605)$   |
| edd6482   | 2020-12-17     | Tim Newsome  | Breakpoint in trap handler *might* be unrecoverable. $(\#603)$        |

| c49e9c3             | 2020-12-16 | Tim Newsome            | Rebuild PDF.  |
|---------------------|------------|------------------------|---|
| 4772b19             | 2020-12-03 | Ernie Edgar            | Add version 1.0 value to dtmcs.version field (#602)   |
| 393d965             | 2020-11-23 | Tim Newsome            | Document changes since 0.13. (#600)   |
| f2ff7a6             | 2020-11-16 | Tim Newsome            | Rebuild PDF.  |
| 2d7190c             | 2020-11-16 | Tim Newsome            | Add clic bit to tmexttrigger. (#599)  |
| 0198481             | 2020-11-16 | Tim Newsome            | Explain how to simply write any trigger. (#598)   |
| b35af12             | 2020-11-16 | Tim Newsome            | Clarify trigger CSR behavior when XLEN changes. (#597)  |
| f116aea             | 2020-11-16 | benscotstaveley        | add dm<br>status.ndm<br>resetpending to allow a debugger to determine when ndm<br>reset is complete $(\#594)$ |
| 3dd952c             | 2020-11-13 | Tim Newsome            | Chains should all have the same type. (#596)  |
| 34f80c6             | 2020-11-13 | Tim Newsome            | AMO operations may be ignored by montrol triggers. (#595)   |
| 9 fea 4c 5          | 2020-11-13 | Tim Newsome            | Add keepalive feature. $(#592)$   |
| 53191a4             | 2020-11-12 | Bruce Ablei-<br>dinger | Added sbytemask field to textra32 and textra64 (#588)   |
| $26040 \mathrm{fd}$ | 2020-11-11 | Tim Newsome            | hit must be set on fire, may be set on match (#593)   |
| a2cf8fc             | 2020-11-11 | Tim Newsome            | Create LaTeX macros for fields without descriptions. (#591)   |
| 2bde1e4             | 2020-11-10 | Tim Newsome            | Change version number to 1.0. $(#590)$  |
| 75a7607             | 2020-11-10 | Paul Donahue           | Fix #587 (#589)   |
| cabb06d             | 2020-11-09 | Tim Newsome            | Rebuild PDF.  |
| c89895c             | 2020-11-06 | Tim Newsome            | Change quick access exceptions to halt the target. (#585)   |
| 46804a6             | 2020-11-04 | Paul Donahue           | Recommend mprven=1 (#580)   |
| 219d105             | 2020-11-03 | Tim Newsome            | Add pending state/bit to icount. (#574)   |
| b860d53             | 2020-11-03 | Tim Newsome            | RISC-V External Debug Support -; RISC-V Debug Support (#581)  |
| fd654d4             | 2020-11-02 | Paul Donahue           | textra $32/64$ also affects the new mcontrol6 triggers $(#578)$   |
| 3d24926             | 2020-10-30 | Tim Newsome            | List all DM registers in Table 3.8. (#579)  |
| 971d0aa             | 2020-10-30 | Paul Donahue           | Add support for the A extension (#561)  |
| d589bc3             | 2020-10-30 | Paul Donahue           | Remove all uses of the ambiguous term "may not" (#576)  |
| db8e814             | 2020-10-29 | Paul Donahue           | Triggers affect harts, not the system. For instance, there may be $(\#575)$                                   |
| c877e9c             | 2020-10-29 | Paul Donahue           | Added exttrigger capability as type 7 (#543)  |
| 0a81ec3             | 2020-10-28 | Tim Newsome            | Debuggers should know when harts are unavailable. (#520)  |
| 65af35f             | 2020-10-26 | Ernie Edgar            | Update debug_module.tex $(#577)$  |
| 99dfc98             | 2020-10-23 | Scott Johnson          | Don't decrement icount.count when exception is blocked by tcontrol.mte (#557)                                 |
| 66481cf             | 2020-10-16 | Paul Donahue           | Fix broken reference (#567)   |
| 0b42843             | 2020-10-16 | benscotstaveley        | require polling of dmactive low as well as dmactive high transitions $(#566)$                                 |
| 1e81d58             | 2020-10-16 | Paul Donahue           | Use official RISC-V terminology $(#564)$  |
| 5c65dfe             | 2020-10-09 | Tim Newsome            | Rebuild PDF.  |

| 9c083f1     | 2020-10-05 | Ernie Edgar    | Clarify that PMP must allow access to DM for debug     |
|-------------|------------|----------------|--|
|             |            |                | to be possible (#554)                                  |
| 7aa5978     | 2020-09-22 | Paul Donahue   | Hypervisor support (#549)                              |
| 597281c     | 2020-09-16 | Ernie Edgar    | Update rocket-chip link to specific commit for per-    |
|             |            |                | manence $(#552)$                                       |
| 072 affe    | 2020-09-16 | Paul Donahue   | Follow suggestion in #544 (#548)                       |
| 8345674     | 2020-09-15 | Paul Donahue   | Add dret to rule 8. $(#547)$                           |
| 175090c     | 2020-09-11 | Paul Donahue   | Add mcontrol6. (#538)                                  |
| de1ec1a     | 2020-09-10 | Paul Donahue   | Fix links to point to fields in the correct registers. |
|             |            |                | (#546)   |
| 4f625ca     | 2020-09-03 | Ernie Edgar    | Add scontext2 alias for scontext (#535)                |
| 7c0a6d5     | 2020-08-28 | Jan Matyas     | aamvirtual: Clarification for systems without address  |
|             |            |                | translations $(#542)$                                  |
| 30b1a97     | 2020-08-24 | Tim Newsome    | Remove end-of-line whitespace in generated com-        |
|             |            |                | ments. $(#540)$  |
| 6e90a60     | 2020-08-21 | Tim Newsome    | Add header to debug_defines.h $(#539)$                 |
| 0200b27     | 2020-08-21 | Tim Newsome    | Improve formatting of autogenerated C header files     |
|             |            |                | (#537)   |
| 97d51c2     | 2020-08-11 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF.   |
| fcf4002     | 2020-08-11 | Tim Newsome    | authdata should only should be implemented if used     |
|             |            |                | (#521)   |
| 0570f14     | 2020-08-05 | Paul Donahue   | Add abstractcs.relaxed<br>priv $(#536)$                |
| 2210002     | 2020-07-07 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF.   |
| b9959e5     | 2020-06-30 | Tim Newsome    | Make explicit that aampostincrement is optional.       |
|             |            |                | (#532)   |
| 67 fed  8 f | 2020-06-19 | Tim Newsome    | Explicitly allow uni-directional external triggers.    |
|             |            |                | (#526)   |
| 9c69bf3     | 2020-06-09 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF.   |
| 85bf $4$ df | 2020-05-21 | Tim Newsome    | Add Kai Meinhard to contributors list.                 |
| 2f1c133     | 2020-05-21 | Kai Meinhard   | Appendix B suggests signals for a DMI with one         |
|             |            |                | DTM connected to one DM (#524)                         |
| 708b1e0     | 2020-04-10 | Tim Newsome    | Add Larry Madar.                                       |
| e02a8b6     | 2020-04-07 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF.   |
| 372b27f     | 2020-03-23 | Tim Newsome    | All tdata functionality is optional (#444)             |
| 50f5c8f     | 2020-03-11 | Tim Newsome    | Explicitly allow hard-coded halt/resume groups.        |
|             |            |                | (#517)   |
| f4794bb     | 2020-03-10 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF.   |
| e3ec24e     | 2020-02-13 | bdwyatt        | Adding version encoding for 0.14 spec. (#512)          |
| cf9a884     | 2020-02-11 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF.   |
| fdd5ad6     | 2020-02-11 | Philipp Wagner | dcsr.prv should be WARL, not R/W (#498)                |
| 38b2794     | 2020-02-11 | Tim Newsome    | sizehi only exists if Xlen¿64. (#514)                  |
| 5a54283     | 2020-01-16 | Tim Newsome    | Use exception, trap, and interrupt as in ISA spec      |
|             |            |                | (#511)   |
| a989a71     | 2020-01-13 | Tim Newsome    | Clarify dmireset/dmihardreset. (#508)                  |
| d10d8d0     | 2020-01-06 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF.   |
| efc0143     | 2020-01-06 | Tim Newsome    | Clarify action=1 (enter Debug Mode) with dmode=0       |
|             |            |                | (#501)   |
|             |            |                |  |

| 439fb93   | 2020-01-06 | Tim Newsome    | Fix conflict in sbdata0/sbautoincrement definition.       |
|-----------|------------|----------------|---|
|           |            |                | (#507)  |
| d35ce10   | 2019-12-10 | Tim Newsome    | Add resume groups. (#506)                                 |
| 2726f30   | 2019-12-06 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF.  |
| a310a37   | 2019-12-04 | Tim Newsome    | Make haltsum0 optional if there is only one hart. (#505)  |
| 349c826   | 2019-11-26 | Tim Newsome    | Halt state may not be preserved across reset. (#504)      |
| 4ab79d7   | 2019-11-26 | Tim Newsome    | Clear MPRV when resuming into lower privilege             |
|           |            |                | mode. (#503)  |
| c9c286b   | 2019-11-22 | Tim Newsome    | Time may pass before dmactive becomes high. (#500)        |
| 9d55a57   | 2019-11-21 | Megan Wachs    | Make the emitted registers chisel3                        |
| 014505f   | 2019-10-08 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF.  |
| 62c63b8   | 2019-10-04 | Tim Newsome    | Document forward progress guarantees in Debug             |
|           |            |                | Mode. (#496)  |
| d933bec   | 2019-10-02 | Tim Newsome    | Rewrite/clarify DM Reset Control (#494)                   |
| 039 bd5a  | 2019-09-23 | Philipp Wagner | Fix wrong table reference (#484)                          |
| 106b4f2   | 2019-09-16 | Tim Newsome    | DM reset must also reset all the DM's harts. (#493)       |
| 8bfcd17   | 2019-09-13 | Tim Newsome    | Explicitly list cmderr=6 (reserved). (#491)               |
| 448 de 85 | 2019-09-12 | Philipp Wagner | dmcontrol.hartreset is WARL, not R/W (#490)               |
| 8637b3c   | 2019-09-10 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF.  |
| f00f436   | 2019-09-10 | Philipp Wagner | Tiny style fix for email "link" on title page (#486)      |
| 3646788   | 2019-09-10 | Philipp Wagner | Fix page references in cmdtype table (#487)               |
| 99ae160   | 2019-09-09 | Megan Wachs    | Update implementations.tex (#482)                         |
| f9c9ed4   | 2019-09-04 | Philipp Wagner | Update registers.py to use Python 3 (#483)                |
| 37d8ee1   | 2019-09-03 | Philipp Wagner | Git ignore intermediate and output files (#485)           |
| 1e99ce7   | 2019-08-13 | Tim Newsome    | Tighten up trigger specification. (#478)                  |
| a121ee1   | 2019-08-13 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF.  |
| 7d126a9   | 2019-07-16 | Tim Newsome    | Mention the scontext reg number isn't conventional (#474) |
| b5df5bd   | 2019-07-16 | Tim Newsome    | Explicitly document confstrptr[1-3]. (#475)               |
| e6311af   | 2019-07-12 | Tim Newsome    | Change R/W1C to reduce requirements on hardware.          |
|           |            |                | (#472)  |
| 178e749   | 2019-07-11 | Tim Newsome    | Define what we mean by virtual address. (#473)            |
| 340c302   | 2019-07-09 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF.  |
| 77d58e6   | 2019-07-08 | Tim Newsome    | Numerous tweaks, responding to Marc Gauthier              |
|           |            |                | (#463)  |
| ab89a86   | 2019-07-04 | Tim Newsome    | Addressing more feedback from Marc Gauthier.              |
|           |            |                | (#465)  |
| 624a6b8   | 2019-06-26 | Tim Newsome    | Without S-mode, textra.svalue and .sselect should be      |
|           |            |                | 0 (#469)  |
| 1977166   | 2019-06-11 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF.  |
| b06eb70   | 2019-06-06 | Tim Newsome    | Clarify mcontrol.size. (#460)                             |
| 165f120   | 2019-05-29 | Tim Newsome    | Fully qualify register/field macro names. (#457)          |
| c47f0a0   | 2019-05-29 | Paul Donahue   | Fix #452 (#459)   |
| 633 ee 13 | 2019-05-28 | Paul Donahue   | Fixed #453 (#458)   |
| 96 ef 519 | 2019-05-20 | Tim Newsome    | The *external* debugger must restore tselect.             |
|           |            |                | (#456)  |

| e11f777 2019-05-08 Tim Newsome Rebuild PDF.  034d0d6 2019-04-30 Tim Newsome Clarify that debuggers should honor maskmax (#440)  4369eb8 2019-04-30 pdonahue- ventana Finesse ligatures to work with Adobe Acrobat Reade search and cut-and-paste (#442) | er         |
|---|------------|
| (#440)<br>4369eb8 2019-04-30 pdonahue- (#460)<br>Finesse ligatures to work with Adobe Acrobat Reade   | er         |
| 4369eb8 2019-04-30 pdonahue- Finesse ligatures to work with Adobe Acrobat Reade   |            |
|   |            |
|   | <u>i</u> – |
| d125b9b 2019-04-30 pdonahue- sberror and sbbusyerror don't both have to be nor  |            |
| ventana zero to prevent (#447)  |            |
| 859e167 2019-04-30 Tim Newsome Tweak address matches. (#449)  |            |
| 96b2b28 2019-04-25 Tim Newsome Clarify not supported cmderr. (#446)   |            |
| 658417f 2019-04-16 Tim Newsome When extending IR, BYPASS still is all ones. (#437   | )          |
| 2e24bab 2019-04-16 Tim Newsome JTAG does not suggest any specific IDCODE encode   | ,          |
| ing (#439)  |            |
| c50efcb 2019-04-09 Tim Newsome Rebuild PDF.   |            |
| 281e4ad 2019-03-21 Tim Newsome Don't run text off a page when longtable is used   | 1.         |
| (#434)  |            |
| 76874e9 2019-03-20 Tim Newsome Explain how to detect the version. (#433)  |            |
| a543b76 2019-03-12 Tim Newsome Rebuild PDF.   |            |
| a686747 2019-02-21 Tim Newsome All trigger registers are optional (#431)  |            |
| d6e4cd8 2019-02-19 Josh Scheid Fix typo. (#426)   |            |
| e773936 2019-02-19 Tim Newsome Try to get travis to build the release branch. (#430   | )          |
| 3621456 2019-02-19 Tim Newsome Abstract memory accesses use the low bits of arguments and accesses use the low bits of arguments.   | ,          |
| (#429)  |            |
| 94a5f9c 2019-02-12 Tim Newsome Clarify that harts halt out of reset if haltreq=   | 1          |
| (#419)  |            |
| 518e732 2019-02-12 Tim Newsome Rebuild PDF.   |            |
| 62f36e1 2019-02-11 Tim Newsome Errata go in 0.13.x, this is 0.14. (#424)  |            |
| 66c3117 2019-01-31 Tim Newsome Address triggers may fire on any accessed address  | 3.         |
| (#421)  |            |
| 6102412 2019-01-31 Tim Newsome \Faamsize does not affect Argument Width. (#420  | )          |
| 1ea1a9b 2019-01-09 Tim Newsome Add nmi bit to etrigger. (#408)  |            |
| d1c7a3f 2019-01-09 Tim Newsome Reserve trigger types for non-standard use. (#417)   |            |
| 83b12fb 2019-01-08 Tim Newsome Rebuild PDF.   |            |
| b4b3b5c 2019-01-07 Tim Newsome \Fversion may be invalid when \Factive=0 (#414)  |            |
| 800450f 2019-01-01 Tim Newsome mte only applies when action= $0 (#411)$   |            |
| 67c7fe2 2018-12-13 Tim Newsome Add pre-built PDF of the 0.13 release.   |            |
| 5e7cb72 2018-12-12 Tim Newsome Stopcount only applies to hart-local counters. (#405   | )          |
| e5902fc 2018-12-12 Tim Newsome Reserve some DMI space for non-standard use  | <b>).</b>  |
| (#406)  |            |
| 3c0dc6a 2018-12-11 Tim Newsome Rebuild PDFs.  |            |
| aeee8f3 2018-12-04 Tim Newsome Add halt groups and external triggers. (#404)  |            |
| 814406d 2018-11-13 Tim Newsome Clarify what the 4 states are. $(#403)$  |            |
| cb64db0 2018-11-06 Tim Newsome Rebuild PDFs.  |            |
| 70 da60 c $2018-11-05$ Tim Newsome sselect applies to svalue. (#402)  |            |
| 66fe38e 2018-11-05 Tim Newsome Fix trigger example value. (#401)  |            |
| 688ccaf 2018-11-05 Tim Newsome Resume ack is set after resume. (#400)   |            |
| 553dda7 2018-11-05 Tim Newsome Fix sbdata0 read order of operations. (#392)   |            |
| b864f54 2018-10-31 Tim Newsome Add Compatibility section to the introduction  | ۱.         |
| (#399)  |            |

| 0b205b1            | 2018-10-31 | Tim Newsome             | Create arrate document (#208)   |
|--------------------|------------|-------------------------|---|
| 5390063            | 2018-10-31 | Tim Newsome Tim Newsome | Create errata document. (#398)<br>Bump version to 0.13.1. (#391)  |
| e46c2db            | 2018-10-20 |                         |   |
| e4662ab<br>ed66f39 |            | bdwyatt<br>Tim Newsome  | Fix link to PDF (#387)<br>Rebuild PDF.  |
|                    | 2018-10-02 |                         |   |
| f2873e7            | 2018-10-02 | Tim Newsome             | Run/Halt figure applies only to single-hart systems. (#385)   |
| a79945f            | 2018-10-02 | Tim Newsome             | Add ASID and context compare for triggers (#363)  |
| 9bb7da6            | 2018-10-02 | Tim Newsome             | Clean up language of $#383$ . $(#384)$  |
| fce4da5            | 2018-10-02 | Tim Newsome             | Make haltreq and resumereq proper write-only. (#383)  |
| e5da11e            | 2018-10-02 | Tim Newsome             | Minimal implementations can't access all registers (#381)   |
| e1be8f4            | 2018-10-02 | Tim Newsome             | Format quotes correctly. (#382)   |
| e9103ba            | 2018-10-02 | Tim Newsome             | Change from AVR debug connector to MIPI-10,20. (#375)   |
| 8841a7a            | 2018-10-02 | Tim Newsome             | Abstract reg access is independent of run/halt. (#380)  |
| 71c54bb            | 2018-10-02 | Tim Newsome             | Explicitly state what's required for compliance. (#379)   |
| 4edb285            | 2018-10-01 | Tim Newsome             | Rebuild PDF.  |
| b0420b3            | 2018-10-01 | Tim Newsome             | Final cleanups! Mostly table formatting. (#377)   |
| d43f5a4            | 2018-10-01 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify W1. (#372)  |
| 72618f3            | 2018-10-01 | Tim Newsome             | Leave space for trace, but don't specify anything.  |
|                    |            |                         | (#376)  |
| b7db4ce            | 2018-10-01 | Tim Newsome             | Add dcsr.cause for being halted out of reset. (#370)  |
| 42ab2a1            | 2018-09-28 | Tim Newsome             | Clean up language, formatting, consistency. (#371)  |
| 7801874            | 2018-09-28 | Tim Newsome             | Little language and formatting cleanups. (#366)   |
| 38ae12f            | 2018-09-27 | Tim Newsome             | Reset dmi.op to 0 instead of 2. (#369)  |
| b50dc0d            | 2018-09-27 | Tim Newsome             | Formatting, language, consistency. (#373)   |
| 425e9b1            | 2018-09-27 | Tim Newsome             | Distinguish draft and release builds. (#364)  |
| c7b4e1c            | 2018-09-26 | Tim Newsome             | Stepping over wfi does not enter wait state. (#368)   |
| 4725879            | 2018-09-25 | Tim Newsome             | Language, formatting, and abstract cmd arguments. (#367)  |
| 62 bf 89 d         | 2018-09-25 | Tim Newsome             | Rebuild PDF.  |
| 10dfa65            | 2018-09-24 | Tim Newsome             | Allow global reset to reset the DM. (#350)  |
| 84ec8a5            | 2018-09-18 | Tim Newsome             | Harts can be in exactly 1 of 4 states. $(\#354)$  |
| 308eaf $6$         | 2018-09-17 | Tim Newsome             | Mostly match "official" style for credits. (#362)   |
| b6187ff            | 2018-09-17 | Tim Newsome             | Specify ackhavereset as W1. (#361)  |
| 41d9f06            | 2018-09-14 | Tim Newsome             | Abstract commands might work on a hung hart.  |
|                    |            |                         | (#360)  |
| fa561bd            | 2018-09-14 | Tim Newsome             | Can't change harts during operations, and the current hart becoming unavailable may terminate the abstract command with error. (#322) |
| 900cdbf            | 2018-09-11 | Tim Newsome             | Rebuild PDF.  |
| 514ef6f            | 2018-09-07 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify lack of notification for other reset harts  |
|                    | ,          |                         | (#349)  |
| e0ff31e            | 2018-09-07 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify postexec when there is no Program Buffer (#352)   |
|                    |            |                         |   |

| 3 dacc 00   | 2018-09-07 | Florian Zaruba | Move regno table to the actual access reg command                |
|-------------|------------|----------------|--|
| 5d25cd5     | 2018-09-06 | Tim Newsome    | (#345)<br>don't set most bits of DMCONTROL during abstract       |
| 12655e0     | 2018-09-06 | Tim Newsome    | commands (#324) Document breakpoint exception + enter debug mode |
| 1200000     | 2010 00 00 | Tim rewsome    | (#299)   |
| 6894f4b     | 2018-09-05 | Tim Newsome    | Define DXLEN as the widest supported XLEN. (#298)                |
| 114a208     | 2018-09-04 | Tim Newsome    | Restrict how many bits may be set in dmcontrol. (#348)           |
| 4cd1563     | 2018-09-03 | Tim Newsome    | Don't change selected harts during hart reset. (#337)            |
| 1529c26     | 2018-09-03 | Tim Newsome    | On trigger chains, only the last action is taken. (#341)         |
| 18a3531     | 2018-08-31 | Tim Newsome    | Authdata is bidirectional. (#347)                                |
| 7d14f95     | 2018-08-27 | Tommy Thorn    | m "LaTeX/english issues: eg; e.g., etc" (#342)                   |
| 0 fb 41 b 9 | 2018-08-27 | Tim Newsome    | Don't change step/stepie while running. (#340)                   |
| ff09418     | 2018-08-21 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF.   |
| 6 bd 15 ac  | 2018-08-20 | Tim Newsome    | Be more clear about running signal. (#338)                       |
| e967b3b     | 2018-08-20 | Tim Newsome    | mprven may be tied high or low. (#339)                           |
| 0 f120 c0   | 2018-08-20 | Tim Newsome    | Solution to native triggers in M mode only systems               |
|             |            |                | (#309)   |
| 13d5c08     | 2018-08-17 | Tim Newsome    | Thank John Hauser.   |
| b52d9fe     | 2018-08-17 | Tim Newsome    | Allow control xfers in progbuf to act as illegal. (#331)         |
| 19058ef     | 2018-08-17 | Tim Newsome    | Clarify that resumered is not level-sensitive. (#321)            |
| 497352c     | 2018-08-16 | Tim Newsome    | Side effects happen for abstract register accesses (#334)        |
| fd5cf62     | 2018-08-15 | Tim Newsome    | Triggers do not fire in Debug Mode. (#335)                       |
| 762d308     | 2018-08-15 | Tim Newsome    | Add aarpostincrement to abstract register access. (#333)         |
| 45b7636     | 2018-08-14 | Tim Newsome    | Clearing hasel does not clear the ha mask reg. (#327)            |
| 2ca20aa     | 2018-08-13 | Tim Newsome    | clrresethaltreq trumps setresethaltreq (#332)                    |
| 57df3f3     | 2018-08-10 | Tim Newsome    | Recommand is not readable. (#328)                                |
| 81df032     | 2018-08-10 | Tim Newsome    | Explain what we mean by Preset. (#323)                           |
| b51c6db     | 2018-08-10 | Tim Newsome    | Clarify ebreak behavior when ebreak* are 0. (#311)               |
| a14d868     | 2018-08-10 | Tim Newsome    | Allow extra harts to be reset. (#330)                            |
| 6d60ad9     | 2018-08-07 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF  |
| f4bd15f     | 2018-08-02 | Tim Newsome    | Define cmderr for non-existent register access. (#325)           |
| 2d7d3d0     | 2018-07-20 | Tim Newsome    | Fix typo in data0 definition.                                    |
| c8a64d1     | 2018-07-19 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF.   |
| 9d2944f     | 2018-07-18 | Tim Newsome    | Add size to montrol. (#310)                                      |
| 6bd1a4c     | 2018-07-16 | Tim Newsome    | Put the description of dmstatus first. (#303)                    |
| 25e81e5     | 2018-07-12 | Tim Newsome    | Fix typo in trigger example. (#308)                              |
| 8462c94     | 2018-07-09 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild pdf.   |
| 38fde94     | 2018-07-09 | Tim Newsome    | datacount cannot be 0 (#286)                                     |
| 800ca8d     | 2018-07-06 | Tim Newsome    | Clarifications requested by Jeremy Bennett (#280)                |
| b363afa     | 2018-07-06 | Tim Newsome    | Add missing .tex file to dependencies. (#302)                    |
|             |            |                | - " " /  |

| 93340e4             | 2018-07-06 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify that trigger registers are WARL. (#306)                  |
|---------------------|------------|-------------------------|--|
| 95af58a             | 2018-07-06 | Tim Newsome Tim Newsome | Force the register-address in place. (#304)                      |
| d83039d             | 2018-07-06 | Tim Newsome             | \Frause priority numbers: higher means higher                    |
| d000000             | 2010 07 00 | Tim rewsome             | (#307)   |
| 921c6a3             | 2018-07-03 | Tim Newsome             | Completing progbuf exec is I/O for fence insts.                  |
|                     |            |                         | (#305)   |
| 99e01fa             | 2018-06-27 | Tim Newsome             | Add target-specific bits to abstract access memory.              |
|                     |            |                         | (#295)   |
| 4a0152d             | 2018-06-19 | Tim Newsome             | Only write busy to \Fcmderr if \Fcmderr is 0.                    |
|                     |            |                         | (#296)   |
| b0dc615             | 2018-06-16 | Tim Newsome             | Rebuild the PDF.   |
| 90873eb             | 2018-06-16 | Tim Newsome             | Fix typo in abstract access memory examples. (#297)              |
| 5 fe 8 e 08         | 2018-06-16 | Tim Newsome             | dret is a section, not a subsection of reset (#294)              |
| abfd8a0             | 2018-06-14 | Tim Newsome             | Revert "Only write busy to \Fcmderr if \Fcmderr is               |
|                     |            |                         | 0."  |
| 7c66968             | 2018-06-14 | Tim Newsome             | Only write busy to \Fcmderr if \Fcmderr is 0.                    |
| 0f28f27             | 2018-06-08 | Tim Newsome             | Abstract memory (#283)   |
| 7c840dd             | 2018-06-08 | Tim Newsome             | Specify an Exception Trigger (#266)                              |
| 9d0d8af             | 2018-06-06 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify what address space these registers are in                |
|                     |            |                         | (#281)   |
| a7f293d             | 2018-06-03 | Tim Newsome             | Add missing dependency to Makefile (#285)                        |
| 37893aa             | 2018-05-30 | Tim Newsome             | Make trigger types writable. (#279)                              |
| 6730cc0             | 2018-05-29 | Tim Newsome             | Explain priority assignment rationale. (#277)                    |
| b6d5d66             | 2018-05-25 | Tim Newsome             | Prevent M mode triggers affecting D mode ones (#282)             |
| 08ee84f             | 2018-05-22 | Tim Newsome             | Reading tselect doesn't guarantee a valid trigger. (#271)        |
| 6dfe375             | 2018-04-18 | Megan Wachs             | Debug Module should be capitalized                               |
| dac2120             | 2018-04-11 | Megan Wachs             | resethaltreq: Proposal for forcing a hart into debug             |
|                     |            | Q                       | mode out of reset  |
| 3b6442f             | 2018-05-16 | Tim Newsome             | tdata2 need only hold valid addresses if select=0                |
|                     |            |                         | (#278)   |
| $68501 \mathrm{cb}$ | 2018-04-26 | mwachs5                 | mprven: Add a bit to enable MPRV to take effect in               |
|                     |            |                         | debug mode   |
| 9 fcabe 0           | 2018-05-03 | Megan Wachs             | Appendix: correct and clarify what debugger vs DM                |
|                     |            |                         | does   |
| 30773 fd            | 2018-05-03 | Tim Newsome             | Debuggers must not write sbcs while sbbusy is set                |
|                     |            |                         | (#270)   |
| 50d8cd8             | 2018-05-03 | Megan Wachs             | Remove merge commits from the changelog                          |
| 3b7a296             | 2018-05-02 | Tim Newsome             | Fix typo.  |
| b26072b             | 2018-05-02 | Tim Newsome             | Explain that 1 in hart array mask means selected                 |
| 41f6026             | 2018-05-02 | Megan Wachs             | Examples: Give an example of CSR access with Quick Access (#268) |
| 675bb $14$          | 2018-05-01 | Tim Newsome             | Replace XLEN with MXLEN. #257                                    |
| 848cca1             | 2018-04-30 | Megan Wachs             | Overview Diagram: increase number of Progbuf words (#267)        |
| a719ee6             | 2018-04-25 | Megan Wachs             | fix misspelled name  |
|                     |            |                         |  |

| 097c701              | 2018-04-23 | Tim Newsome    | Fix typo.   |
|----------------------|------------|----------------|---|
| 01 dabd5             | 2018-04-23 | Tim Newsome    | Incorporate review feedback.                            |
| ca7a9d0              | 2018-04-18 | Tim Newsome    | Add trigger examples for match types 1, 4, and 5        |
| cd5a15c              | 2018-04-16 | Tim Newsome    | Give a few trigger examples.                            |
| 4375927              | 2018-04-12 | Tim Newsome    | Clarify that maskmax applies only to NAPOT trigger      |
| acadfe9              | 2018-04-13 | Megan Wachs    | NMI: debugging may not be possible if an NMI hap-       |
|                      |            | O              | pens  |
| 8 fb 190 c           | 2018-04-12 | Tim Newsome    | Another attempt at SBA errors.                          |
| 714c5d1              | 2018-04-11 | Megan Wachs    | Core Debug: all interrupts are masked includes NMI      |
| 56fbd9d              | 2018-04-11 | Megan Wachs    | DCSR: add nmip bit to indicate NMI is pending           |
| fffe3c2              | 2018-04-10 | Tim Newsome    | Clarify SBA unsupport access size error.                |
| b4006ac              | 2018-04-10 | Tim Newsome    | Clarify high bits of sbdata in narrow reads.            |
| 4ca83dd              | 2018-03-28 | Tim Newsome    | Clarify progbuf=1 some more                             |
| 3b62243              | 2018-03-26 | Tim Newsome    | Clarify debugger requirements when progbufsize=1        |
| ffba4d0              | 2018-03-26 | Tim Newsome    | Explain why progbufsize=1 is special                    |
| 6b88905              | 2018-03-19 | Megan Wachs    | haltsum1: correct its address to be BWC and not         |
|                      |            |                | overlap with ABSTRACTAUTO                               |
| 2382e2e              | 2018-03-06 | Megan Wachs    | Correct some inaccuarices in the chisel generated files |
| 3e88e11              | 2018-03-06 | Megan Wachs    | travis: add 'make chisel' target to regression          |
| 32cbb9b              | 2018-03-19 | Tim Newsome    | Nonexistent/unavailable harts are not halted.           |
| f8a7bb7              | 2018-03-19 | Tim Newsome    | More clarification.                                     |
| e21ae4c              | 2018-03-16 | Tim Newsome    | Allow any bit in hart array mask to be tied to 0        |
| efb7e45              | 2018-03-15 | Tim Newsome    | Change dcsr.prv reset value to 3                        |
| f19946b              | 2018-03-15 | Tim Newsome    | Clarify hart array mask register size.                  |
| ddec145              | 2018-03-14 | Tim Newsome    | Be more precise about core vs hart                      |
| 4e5f4ad              | 2018-03-14 | Tim Newsome    | Review feedback.  |
| 8ac9273              | 2018-03-14 | Tim Newsome    | Be more precise about processor vs hart                 |
| 83c9774              | 2018-03-14 | Tim Newsome    | Clarify abstract command errors.                        |
| $4 \mathrm{ebc} 177$ | 2018-03-14 | Tim Newsome    | hawindowsel can be smaller, depends on # of harts       |
| 11e1b5c              | 2018-03-14 | Tim Newsome    | Split future ideas section into a notes doc             |
| bafeeaa              | 2018-03-13 | Tim Newsome    | Rebuild PDF   |
| 6a85d53              | 2018-03-13 | Tim Newsome    | Incorporate review feedback.                            |
| f213315              | 2018-03-09 | Tim Newsome    | Clarify user responsibilities when debugging lr/sc      |
| 3641305              | 2018-03-09 | Tim Newsome    | Remove implemented features from Future Ideas.          |
| 1135bf3              | 2018-03-06 | Tim Newsome    | Incorporate feedback.                                   |
| 8f35e7e              | 2018-03-05 | Megan Wachs    | gt_1024: Clarify that some registers may not be         |
|                      |            | _              | present for small numbers of harts                      |
| 683ae37              | 2018-02-14 | Megan Wachs    | hartsum-¿haltsum  |
| ee51758              | 2018-02-14 | Megan Wachs    | Modification of ; 1024 hart proposal that maintains     |
|                      |            | 9              | backwards compatibility                                 |
| 370d222              | 2018-03-05 | Tim Newsome    | Rephrase description of hit bit.                        |
| eee5e0c              | 2018-03-05 | Tim Newsome    | Clarify multiple DMs/harts                              |
| 4d5acef              | 2018-02-28 | Tim Newsome    | Clarify what happens when \Fauthenticated is clear      |
| 6a0c9ec              | 2018-02-27 | Tim Newsome    | Move hit bit per review feedback.                       |
| 097 bd8e             | 2018-02-21 | Tim Newsome    | Fix link to pre-built pdf                               |
| d21774b              | 2018-02-21 | Omer Faruk IR- | Python interpreter to be used should default to         |
|                      |            | MAK            | Python2   |
| a8c10cf              | 2018-02-20 | Tim Newsome    | Incorporate review feedback.                            |
|                      |            |                | •   |

| a0f947c    | 2018-02-20 | Tim Newsome | Make trigger hit bit optional.                        |
|------------|------------|-------------|---|
| 77e4634    | 2018-02-08 | Tim Newsome | Add hit bit to hardware triggers.                     |
| 140390a    | 2018-02-05 | Tim Newsome | Better wording.                                       |
| e35b1ff    | 2018-02-05 | Tim Newsome | Move Reg Access Abbrev table after sample register    |
| e887433    | 2018-02-05 | Tim Newsome | Use longtable instead of xtabular.                    |
| 5c84437    | 2018-01-31 | Tim Newsome | Abstract Command data usage depends on the com-       |
|            |            |             | mand  |
| 3d508ea    | 2018-01-25 | Tim Newsome | HARTSELBITS-; HARTSELLEN and other feed-              |
|            |            |             | back  |
| eb653f7    | 2018-01-24 | Tim Newsome | Be explicit about the size of \Fhartsel.              |
| 822 bd81   | 2018-01-24 | Tim Newsome | Revert incrementing version number.                   |
| 4c755af    | 2018-01-24 | Tim Newsome | \Fsbbusyerror also inhibits new accesses.             |
| 457413d    | 2018-01-24 | Tim Newsome | Update how to enumerate all harts.                    |
| 2180801    | 2018-01-18 | Tim Newsome | Fix ambiguity in busy error reporting.                |
| 3140efa    | 2018-01-09 | Tim Newsome | Re-apply e698a5001aa4583d31dde484d78f4f10e4e3148f     |
|            |            |             | . No need to list out all the consecutive registers.  |
| 390 daa7   | 2018-01-18 | mwachs5     | sbaddress: Only writes to address will actually cause |
|            |            |             | an error. Reads while busy are permitted.             |
| 5c820f3    | 2018-01-18 | Megan Wachs | Remove reference to "caches"                          |
| 4533648    | 2018-01-18 | Megan Wachs | correct access spelling                               |
| d37c1ac    | 2018-01-16 | Tim Newsome | Fix table column overruns by going full manual        |
| e9100ea    | 2018-01-16 | Tim Newsome | Correct when sbbusy error is set for being busy.      |
| c029cc7    | 2018-01-16 | Tim Newsome | Complete partial sentence.                            |
| 494338a    | 2018-01-15 | Tim Newsome | Add clarifications about error handling.              |
| e14c34e    | 2018-01-15 | Tim Newsome | Incorporate review feedback.                          |
| 68720e5    | 2018-01-15 | Tim Newsome | Remove H bits from triggers.                          |
| b8eb62a    | 2018-01-15 | Tim Newsome | Clarify when sbaccess is checked for validity         |
| 8b50d29    | 2018-01-12 | Tim Newsome | Add \Fsbbusy, to avoid race clearing \Fsberror        |
| 50b1b41    | 2018-01-12 | Tim Newsome | Clarify: writes to \Rsbdata0 write the new data       |
| 7f26759    | 2018-01-12 | Tim Newsome | Clarify exactly which bits are used for SB access.    |
| 47a019c    | 2018-01-11 | Tim Newsome | Fix typo.   |
| a49d6ad    | 2018-01-11 | Tim Newsome | sbreadonaddr is $R/W$                                 |
| 42195c2    | 2018-01-11 | Tim Newsome | Fix cut-and-paste error.                              |
| 6c95235    | 2018-01-11 | Tim Newsome | Add sbaddress3, for future proofing.                  |
| e3345ea    | 2018-01-11 | Tim Newsome | Incorporate review feedback.                          |
| 6 da 48 f8 | 2018-01-11 | Tim Newsome | Remove dmerr.   |
| e99c092    | 2018-01-10 | Tim Newsome | Add system bus version field.                         |
| a6aa531    | 2018-01-10 | Tim Newsome | Talk about all data and progbuf regs in first reg     |
| af272db    | 2018-01-09 | Megan Wachs | Update dret font                                      |
| 3d579d8    | 2018-01-09 | Tim Newsome | Explicitly list data[1-10] and progbuf[1-15]          |
| c6481ae    | 2018-01-09 | Tim Newsome | Revert "Explicitly list data[1-10] and progbuf[1-15]" |
| e698a50    | 2018-01-09 | Tim Newsome | Explicitly list data[1-10] and progbuf[1-15]          |
| e547ed5    | 2018-01-09 | Tim Newsome | Clarify that we deal in physical addresses only.      |
| b377b89    | 2018-01-09 | Tim Newsome | Revert "Clarify that we deal in physical addresses    |
|            |            |             | only."  |
| f7da066    | 2018-01-09 | Tim Newsome | Clarify that we deal in physical addresses only.      |
| 99a1599    | 2018-01-09 | Tim Newsome | Clarify that \Fdatasize contains at most 12.          |
| ae6e88a    | 2018-01-09 | mwachs5     | dret: Legal only in Debug Mode                        |
|            |            |             |   |

| 18f392d         | 2017-11-24     | Tim Newsome             | Get rid of sbsingleread in favor of sbreadonaddr        |
|-----------------|----------------|-------------------------|---|
| 5754a3b         | 2018-01-05     | Megan Wachs             | Use a different word than "clobbered"                   |
| aca7e0b         | 2018-01-03     | Megan Wachs             | Add missing "to"s to abstractauto description           |
| d59ddf3         | 2018-01-03     | Megan Wachs             | Correct plurality of halted harts in haltsum            |
| 57c53ed         | 2017-12-22     | Tim Newsome             | Put parens around all macros that need it.              |
| 7 ded  846      | 2017-12-18     | Tim Newsome             | Refer to existing hart instead of "valid"               |
| 68b8ac8         | 2017-12-15     | Tim Newsome             | Make \Fhaltsel WARL.                                    |
| 6a72f45         | 2017-12-18     | Tim Newsome             | Mark this as a draft, which it is.                      |
| dd8d871         | 2017-12-18     | Tim Newsome             | Properly deal with \ chars in the changelog.            |
| 42f920c         | 2017-12-18     | Tim Newsome             | Deal with \ chars in the changelog.                     |
| b13891c         | 2017-12-15     | Tim Newsome             | Revert "Make \Fhaltsel WARL."                           |
| 26d76a0         | 2017-12-15     | Tim Newsome             | Make \Fhaltsel WARL.                                    |
| afda8d7         | 2017-11-28     | mwachs5                 | update PDF  |
| 134d310         | 2017-11-28     | Megan Wachs             | Correct compressed version of ebreak                    |
| caa 1258        | 2017-11-27     | Megan Wachs             | badaddr -; tval (Priv Spec 1.9 -; 1.9.1)                |
| 32b0f08         | 2017-11-27     | Tim Newsome             | Incorporate feedback.                                   |
| 2f7aa54         | 2017-11-22     | Tim Newsome Tim Newsome | Simplify, and explain trigger behavior.                 |
| 3e5887f         | 2017-11-22     | Tim Newsome Tim Newsome | Clarify some single step corner cases.                  |
| f4b9ae2         | 2017-11-21     | Tim Newsome Tim Newsome | Make ackhavereset write-only. (#178)                    |
| efe3dc8         | 2017-11-21     | Tim Newsome Tim Newsome | Make hartreset R/W (#177)                               |
| ce1b359         | 2017-11-21     | Megan Wachs             | Reset clarifications (#172)                             |
| 852a70d         | 2017-11-17     | Megan Wachs             | icount: remove warning (#173)                           |
| 363348f         | 2017-11-16     | Tim Newsome             | - (   |
| 3033461         | 2017-11-10     | Tim Newsome             | Explain cache coherency wrt to system bus access (#171) |
| 26ea898         | 2017-11-15     | Tim Newsome             | Refer to ISA and priv docs.                             |
| ffc8c62         | 2017-11-03     | Tim Newsome             | Mention the index in "about this doc"                   |
| a4257ef         | 2017-11-02     | Tim Newsome             | Add an index to the document.                           |
| f5f45a5         | 2017-10-30     | Megan Wachs             | Add 'has reset' status and control (#168)               |
| 46f3f54         | 2017 - 10 - 25 | Tim Newsome             | Incorporate review feedback.                            |
| 104247f         | 2017-10-24     | Megan Wachs             | Update README.md  |
| 6 dd 5c 80      | 2017-10-24     | Megan Wachs             | Update README.md  |
| cb1a847         | 2017-10-24     | Megan Wachs             | Add a note to the README about the built PDF            |
| e00625f         | 2017-10-18     | Tim Newsome             | Include pdf.  |
| c23e729         | 2017-10-18     | Tim Newsome             | Clarify more.   |
| 83f9faf         | 2017-10-11     | Tim Newsome             | Clarify what \Fimpebreak does.                          |
| 78082b5         | 2017-10-11     | Tim Newsome             | Mention \Fimpebreak in Program Buffer description.      |
| 0378324         | 2017-10-11     | mwachs5                 | Add legend and update some transitions on the Ab-       |
|                 |                |                         | stract Command State Machine diagram                    |
| fa2b600         | 2017-10-11     | Megan Wachs             | add missing period                                      |
| 0610630         | 2017-10-11     | Megan Wachs             | Just do simple hmode -¿ dmode replacement               |
| 16e11f3         | 2017-10-11     | Tim Newsome             | Remove hmode reference, to fix build.                   |
| 84b $9$ a $6$ a | 2017-10-11     | Tim Newsome             | Add \Fimpebreak, to support of implicit ebreak.         |
| cc90b77         | 2017-10-11     | mwachs5                 | Remove reference to 'H' mode from the figure            |
| cc6a9de         | 2017-10-11     | Megan Wachs             | Change old reference to 'hmode' to 'dmode'              |
| ea2877d         | 2017-10-10     | Tim Newsome             | Move how-to-debug into the relevant section.            |
| 486ecc $6$      | 2017-10-05     | Tim Newsome             | Refuse unsupported bus accesses.                        |
| 6ca221d         | 2017-10-05     | Tim Newsome             | haltreq, resumereq, hartreset are per-hart bits         |
| d4118ab         | 2017-09-30     | Tim Newsome             | ndmreset can't reset logic required to access DM.       |

| Cl 10 11            | 2017 00 00 | m· M                    | 1 .  |
|---------------------|------------|-------------------------|--|
| c6bd8d1             | 2017-09-29 | Tim Newsome             | and -; or  |
| 58c2441             | 2017-09-29 | Tim Newsome             | Mention \Fstepie in Single Step                    |
| 94c5f78             | 2017-09-29 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify ndmreset.                                  |
| 12810b4             | 2017-09-29 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify that shaddress is physical.                |
| 5862 fdf            | 2017-09-29 | Tim Newsome             | Unify M mode and mprv comment.                     |
| aea1bd5             | 2017-09-29 | Tim Newsome             | Define behavior when haltreq and resumereq are set |
| 146b348             | 2017-09-28 | Megan Wachs             | remove superflous 'an'                             |
| a5d16c4             | 2017-09-28 | Megan Wachs             | remove superfluous 'a'                             |
| 052a8ab             | 2017-09-28 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify that a debugger can lose hart control.     |
| cc52cff             | 2017-09-28 | Tim Newsome             | Add \Fdmerr.                                       |
| $25685 \mathrm{eb}$ | 2017-09-28 | Tim Newsome             | Explain that bus master or progbuf is required.    |
| f75ee7d             | 2017-09-28 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify debugger can discover "almost" everything  |
| 71e6788             | 2017-09-27 | Tim Newsome             | Remove description of manual stepping.             |
| 9aea347             | 2017-09-27 | Tim Newsome             | Move Running/Single Step near Halting.             |
| 2090d9b             | 2017-09-27 | Tim Newsome             | data0 should be sbdata0 in this table.             |
| 5858cfe             | 2017-09-27 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify why \Rpriv exists.                         |
| bc3c2aa             | 2017-09-27 | Tim Newsome             | Mention where priv encoding comes from.            |
| ef77cc4             | 2017-09-27 | Tim Newsome             | One more attempt to clarify DPC after single step. |
| 80a288e             | 2017-09-27 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify instret not incrementing on ebreak.        |
| c163d22             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Remove ebreakh.                                    |
| 9971075             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify we're talking about privilege              |
| 3fbe495             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify that we're talking about *implementation*  |
| 3684854             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Use steps environment in sbdata0.                  |
| d4eda18             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Explain that only sbdata0 has side effects.        |
| ae781c6             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Don't refer to internal system bus registers.      |
| 875922e             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Explain sbdata0 being stale a bit more.            |
| cd44fd5             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify autoread                                   |
| 194484b             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify hawindow.                                  |
| 02f1aac             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify that \Fdataaddr is relative to \Rzero.     |
| 0e9b6ae             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify nonexistent vs unavailable.                |
| b55ff41             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Fix devtreevalid.                                  |
| 2eccb86             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome Tim Newsome | Explicitly state which registers are read-only.    |
| 4af505c             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome Tim Newsome |  |
| cbd5573             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome Tim Newsome | Show section numbers for registers.  Thank Nikhil  |
| 19c206f             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome Tim Newsome |  |
|                     |            |                         | Clarify how to determine whether progbuf is RAM    |
| 0651f7d             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Explain what happens if ebreak is missing.         |
| e889dae             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Move figure of states into its own section.        |
| cff7b80             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Explain when \Ftransfer might be used.             |
| 6b2ee61             | 2017-09-20 | Tim Newsome             | Explain where \Fsize encoding came from.           |
| c9f3b73             | 2017-09-14 | Tim Newsome             | Fix typo.  |
| 4b25400             | 2017-09-13 | Tim Newsome             | Mention dpc in CSRs abstract register numbers.     |
| c3ee426             | 2017-09-13 | Tim Newsome             | Move abstract regno table closer to its reference. |
| 111b9a3             | 2017-09-13 | Tim Newsome             | cycle -; operation                                 |
| 994afdc             | 2017-09-13 | Tim Newsome             | Account for multiple selected harts.               |
| aa4a297             | 2017-09-13 | Tim Newsome             | Halt Control -¿ Run Control                        |
| e97c821             | 2017-09-13 | Tim Newsome             | continuous -¿ contiguous                           |
| 97f73ff             | 2017-09-13 | Tim Newsome             | Clarify ndmreset behavior.                         |
| 6078220             | 2017-09-13 | Tim Newsome             | Explain ndmreset                                   |
|                     |            |                         |  |

| a3d4f30        | 2017-09-13     | Tim Newsome | Describe 'halt region'                                 |
|----------------|----------------|-------------|--|
| 272b3d9        | 2017-09-13     | Tim Newsome | Clarify accessing unimplemented DM DMI regs            |
| 3e91f1b        | 2017-09-13     | Tim Newsome | Clarify either Prog Buf or Sys Bus Acc is required     |
| e8a6145        | 2017-09-13     | Tim Newsome | Clarify CSR access; remove serial port                 |
| ce20766        | 2017-09-13     | Tim Newsome | Remove section referencing itself.                     |
| 1195a61        | 2017-09-18     | Tim Newsome | Generate constants to be unsigned for clang.           |
| 8967 b0a       | 2017-08-16     | Megan Wachs | Compressed instructions are c.foo, not foo.c           |
| b5698a9        | 2017-08-16     | Megan Wachs | clarify progbufsize description                        |
| d221bab        | 2017-08-16     | Megan Wachs | Remove progbufsize enums from register description     |
| 0498102        | 2017-08-16     | Megan Wachs | appendix: Use standard assembly format for sw          |
| 4456d99        | 2017-08-09     | Tim Newsome | Rename progrize to progbufsize.                        |
| 55d5b66        | 2017-08-09     | Tim Newsome | Clarify that trigger comparisons are unsigned.         |
| 21e35ef        | 2017-08-09     | Tim Newsome | Configuration String -; Device Tree                    |
| f044f45        | 2017-08-02     | Tim Newsome | Don't require a target to provide 25mA on VCC.         |
| c883943        | 2017-08-02     | Tim Newsome | Add table of Abstract Command Types                    |
| 985a3df        | 2017-08-02     | Tim Newsome | Fix and speed up build.                                |
| 95b9108        | 2017-08-02     | mwachs5     | DTM: Clarify that there are no cases when DMI          |
|                |                |             | would actually return an error.                        |
| 9c9e0c0        | 2017-08-02     | mwachs5     | SystemBus: No longer returns error. So DMI has no      |
|                |                |             | 'error' return code.                                   |
| 5ba $18$ f $9$ | 2017 - 07 - 27 | Tim Newsome | Fix more typos.  |
| dbc65bf        | 2017-07-26     | Tim Newsome | Fix typos.   |
| bba0ad9        | 2017-07-26     | Tim Newsome | Tighten up introduction lists.                         |
| e22d5eb        | 2017-07-26     | Tim Newsome | Add version constants for "not compatible".            |
| c79038e        | 2017-07-26     | Tim Newsome | Small clarification.                                   |
| 9df0411        | 2017-07-21     | Tim Newsome | Incorporate review feedback.                           |
| d67419c        | 2017-07-21     | Tim Newsome | Clarify dpc contents.                                  |
| 9 f 50 c 05    | 2017-07-11     | Tim Newsome | Use LL instead of L for 64-bit constant suffix.        |
| 23 fd 24a      | 2017-07-10     | Megan Wachs | Cleaning up whitespaces                                |
| c5ab04c        | 2017-07-10     | Megan Wachs | Update abstract_commands.xml                           |
| 6e8cdf1        | 2017-07-10     | Megan Wachs | Update abstract_commands.xml                           |
| cf6e3f2        | 2017-07-10     | Megan Wachs | clarify DCSR.cause                                     |
| 79ffbb $9$     | 2017-07-10     | Megan Wachs | Clarify implications of CSR read, write, halt          |
| 013e191        | 2017-07-10     | Megan Wachs | Clarify when you would get error halt/resume           |
| 231e457        | 2017-07-10     | Megan Wachs | Quick Access error clarification                       |
| c54c2f2        | 2017-07-03     | mwachs5     | serial: add the XML file, not the TEX file             |
| ac77477        | 2017-07-03     | mwachs5     | serial: Fix compile errors after moving serial port to |
|                |                |             | appendix   |
| 6defcb $8$     | 2017-07-03     | mwachs5     | serial: Move serial ports out of main spec and into    |
|                |                |             | Future Work appendix                                   |
| a28f639        | 2017-06-30     | mwachs5     | remove trace dependencies from Makefile                |
| 52a122b        | 2017-06-30     | mwachs5     | remove trace section                                   |
| d9e166b        | 2017-06-30     | mwachs5     | remove trace registers                                 |
| 7caf $4$ e $5$ | 2017-06-30     | mwachs5     | remove trace appendix                                  |
| 4688988        | 2017-06-29     | mwachs5     | DCSR: define a 'stepie' bit which may be hard-wired    |
|                |                |             | to 0.  |
| 9a0492c        | 2017-06-13     | Megan Wachs | Add missing period and some other small text edits     |
| 13ccdbf        | 2017-06-13     | Megan Wachs | fix typo in ProgBuf register macro                     |
| -              |                | <u> </u>    | VI 0 0   |

| b01f989               | 2017-06-13                           | mwachs5                 | implementations: be a bit more concrete about the                                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|--|
|                       |                                      |                         | one example implementation we have.  |
| a7b5f83               | 2017-06-13                           | mwachs5                 | jtagdtm: Move it out of the appendix as it is really                                 |
| 97aaab0               | 2017 06 12                           | Moran Washa             | part of the specification  |
| 87aceb0               | 2017-06-13                           | Megan Wachs             | remove "spontaneous"   |
| 50b9950               | 2017-06-13                           | Megan Wachs             | Forward reference for anynonexistent   |
| adea3e2               | 2017-06-13                           | Megan Wachs             | More clarifications on dret  |
| 1b8dd0e               | 2017-06-13                           | Megan Wachs             | Define DRET instruction  |
| 617 da4c              | 2017-06-08                           | Megan Wachs             | Update description of R/W1C  |
| de2c56b               | 2017-06-08                           | Megan Wachs             | Clarify that DCSR is also not updated on ebreak                                      |
| efa615d               | 2017-06-07                           | Tim Newsome             | Increase xdebugver field size to 4 bits. $(#92)$                                     |
| a0e147a               | 2017-06-07                           | Tim Newsome             | Address some review comments.  |
| 89 ffe 50             | 2017-06-06                           | mwachs5                 | NDMRESET: Clarify what it may and may not do   |
| 1932 da0              | 2017-06-06                           | mwachs5                 | DPC: Clarifications on its meaning   |
| 6470fdb               | 2017-06-06                           | mwachs5                 | ABSTRACTCS: Correct inconsistency on the num-  |
|                       |                                      |                         | ber of data words.   |
| 3ca82b4               | 2017-06-06                           | Megan Wachs             | More corrections for R vs R/W1C on SERCS   |
| 9705fb8               | 2017-06-06                           | Megan Wachs             | Correct a bunch of W0 registers  |
| 1347371               | 2017-06-05                           | Tim Newsome             | Add intdisable to dcsr.  |
| 989c60d               | 2017-06-05                           | Tim Newsome             | Fix language. We can only halt harts, not cores.                                     |
| 517a08b               | 2017-06-05                           | Tim Newsome             | Incorporate review feedback.   |
| 802 be 28             | 2017-06-05                           | Tim Newsome Tim Newsome | -  |
|                       |                                      |                         | Clarify/fix Quick Access example.  |
| b8cc523               | 2017-06-02                           | Tim Newsome             | Add included tex files as dependencies. (#78)  |
| 15f864a               | 2017-06-01                           | Tim Newsome             | Language cleanups, consistency and typo fixes.                                       |
| 4ecae86               | 2017-06-01                           | Tim Newsome             | Add page numbers to list-of-register tables.   |
| 59b3e4a               | 2017-05-19                           | Megan Wachs             | Setting up a Travis regression to check for build errors $(\#72)$                    |
| 124 bf 44             | 2017 - 05 - 17                       | mwachs5                 | Debug Module: CMDERR is Write-1-to clear, not  |
|                       |                                      |                         | R/W0   |
| bb6c7f0               | 2017-05-17                           | mwachs5                 | SW Registers file should be XML, not TEX   |
| d360358               | 2017-05-10                           | Megan Wachs             | Remove virtual register from core_registers.xml                                      |
|                       |                                      | (Temporary Acct.)       |  |
| bfc64fb               | 2017-05-10                           | Megan Wachs             | Add missing sw_registers.tex file  |
| 5100415               | 2011 00 10                           | (Temporary              | ridd inissing switegisters tox inc   |
|                       |                                      | Acct.)                  |  |
| OF LOST J             | 2017 05 06                           | *                       | M:   |
| 0512f5d               | 2017-05-06                           | mwachs5                 | Move virtual 'prv' register to a seperate section to                                 |
| al a a l <del>e</del> | 2015 05 02                           | 1 -                     | make it more clear it is not a real register.  |
| 6b3c9d7               | 2017-05-06                           | mwachs5                 | Clarify haltreq/resumereq/resumack   |
| 0a487eb               | 2017-04-26                           | mwachs5                 | jtag: Change specified JTAG pinout from Coretex to AVR, to provide for TRSTn option. |
| 93cdfaf               | 2017-04-26                           | mwachs5                 | DM: Clarify that DATA/PROGBUF can't be written while busy.                           |
| ef98f23               | 2017-04-19                           | mwachs5                 | jtag: Make it clear that a NOP is really a NOP.                                      |
| a6f8efa               | 2017-04-17                           | mwachs5                 | single_step: Exceptions count as the 'step' comple-                                  |
| aorocia               | 2011 <sup>2</sup> 0 <del>1</del> -11 | III W COLLSO            | tion.  |
| bf11e9e               | 2017-04-17                           | mwachs5                 | resumeack: fix some LaTeX cross references   |

| 4afa081                     | 2017-04-11 | mwachs5 | halt/resumereq: Clarify what setting them to 0 or 1 does  |
|-----------------------------|------------|---------|---|
| 297a39b                     | 2017-04-06 | mwachs5 | fix chisel build  |
| 082c499                     | 2017-04-06 | mwachs5 | Rename resumed to resumeack, and add more text about what these bits mean.  |
| 909d617                     | 2017-04-06 | mwachs5 | Correct some cross references after removing all the multiply listed registers  |
| dd09914                     | 2017-04-06 | mwachs5 | Add 'resumedall' and 'resumedany' bits to avoid race condition on about to resume and just halted   |
| feb88fc                     | 2017-04-05 | mwachs5 | JTAG DTM: Clarify that leading bits are 0 for more than 5-bit IR  |
| 75b96ea                     | 2017-04-04 | mwachs5 | use renamed dm_registers file   |
| 9f3ec7e                     | 2017-04-04 | mwachs5 | debugger_implementation: remove some old TODO and commentary.   |
| 45dd5b5                     | 2017-04-04 | mwachs5 | Don't list out every single DM register for those that are just indexed versions  |
| b8b3aa2                     | 2017-04-04 | mwachs5 | remove core-side register definitions from Debug<br>Module. Rename dm1 to dm  |
| d979a13                     | 2017-04-04 | mwachs5 | remove core-side serial port specification, as these should look like implementation-specific devices with  |
| b56870b                     | 2017-04-04 | mwachs5 | appropriate drivers.  Remove the wording about 'debug exception', as it is called breakpoint exception in the RISC-V Spec.  |
| $1\mathrm{e}9347\mathrm{d}$ | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | Add description of hasel  |
| 0 dda 84 d                  | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | JTAG DTM: Clean up TAP register descriptions  |
| 82ccde5                     | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | JTAG DTM: Add a hard DMI bit which cancels the outstanding DMI transaction  |
| bd2a3d1                     | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | remove preexec  |
| 02c733a                     | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | remove preexec from Abstract State diagram.   |
| 1e271d6                     | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | Update Debugger implementation for DMI register access, and fix tex compile issues.   |
| 155dda4                     | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | Rewrite HW Implementation examples to describe a<br>pure abstract command approach, and to not rely<br>on harts executing every instruciton which is fetched<br>from the Debug Module |
| 556c2be                     | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | minor wording edits about RISC-V core registers   |
| 523c64a                     | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | Edits to the Debug Module section.  |
| b9a371f                     | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | add missing trace.tex file.   |
| 58b2396                     | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | Re-order the JTAG DTM Sections  |
| a8827e2                     | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | Edits to the System Overview.   |
| c5417ce                     | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | add more sections as seperate files.  |
| 287d5c6                     | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | moving more files to seperate tex files.  |
| 9e873f4                     | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | move trigger info into seperate file.   |
| 2c89a86                     | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | move risc-v core debug info into seperate file.   |
| e676491                     | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | Move System Overview to separate file   |
| 03df $6$ ee                 | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | Move Debug Module description to a seperate file.   |
| 5faa $430$                  | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5 | add back in JTAG DTM in appendix  |
|                             |            |         |   |

| 7b28b11  | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5       | Move jtag DTM to appendix. Move some text to                           |
|----------|------------|---------------|--|
| cc183ba  | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5       | commentary.  move introduction to a seperate file. Comment out         |
| f727d14  | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5       | reading order. Use Chapters vs Sections. Needs reorganization.         |
| 815951d  | 2017-04-03 | mwachs5       | Formatting updates. Make this look more like the                       |
| 010901ti | 2017-04-03 | IIIwaciisə    | RISC-V specs. Need to use chapter vs. section                          |
| 69ffaf8  | 2017-03-31 | mwachs5       | Move XML files into a subdirectory.                                    |
| b276384  | 2017-03-31 | mwachs5       | Remove debug_rom.S   |
| 112bbac  | 2017-03-31 | mwachs5       | figures: reorganize the figures into directories.                      |
| 1e5c068  | 2017-03-31 | Megan Wachs   | Add LICENSE  |
| fc17730  | 2017-03-27 | Po-wei Huang  | Change some halt mode into debug mode.                                 |
| 8ccf029  | 2017-03-22 | Po-wei Huang  |  |
| occ1029  | 2017-03-22 | ro-wei fluang | All halt mode changed to debug mode to synchronize with the priv spec. |
| f143d9e  | 2017-03-21 | mwachs5       | Correct duplicated progbuf register names                              |
| 0797ec1  | 2017-03-17 | mwachs5       | autoexec: make autoexec bits match the number of                       |
|          |            |               | data words there really are.   |
| 8e76d93  | 2017-03-17 | mwachs5       | dm1_registers: move a few more things around. Re-                      |
|          |            |               | duce abstract data words back to 12.                                   |
| f8bf292  | 2017-03-17 | mwachs5       | dm1_registers: resolve some address conflicts and in-                  |
|          |            |               | consistencies  |
| a74dff9  | 2017-03-17 | mwachs5       | access_register: some small bit changes                                |
| 2e6b0ca  | 2017-03-15 | mwachs5       | config string: Fix LaTeX compile errors.                               |
| f83260a  | 2017-03-10 | mwachs5       | Abstract Commands: clarify that 32-bit reads should                    |
|          |            |               | always work. This allows reading MISA.                                 |
| 6f9347a  | 2017-03-10 | mwachs5       | Config String: change the Abstract Command to                          |
|          |            |               | DMI registers. Allow the same registers to be used                     |
|          |            |               | for unspecified identifier information.                                |
| 4ea10ff  | 2017-03-10 | mwachs5       | abstract: Make autoexec apply to all data and prog-                    |
|          |            |               | buf words. Make a seperate register which is optional.                 |
| 5008436  | 2017-03-10 | mwachs5       | abstract: Allow up to 16 progbuf and/or data words.                    |
|          |            |               | Inform debugger about dscratch registers available                     |
|          |            |               | for its use.   |
| aaa13e5  | 2017-03-06 | mwachs5       | Command: use the name 'cmdtype' not 'type' to al-                      |
|          |            |               | low easier auto-generation of Scala code.                              |
| e9bb72c  | 2017-03-06 | mwachs5       | Hart Array: Add registers for hart array.                              |
| 5d17a35  | 2017-03-06 | mwachs5       | DM: Move addresses around for better seperation of                     |
|          |            |               | functionalities in HW  |
| 25ccaa8  | 2017-03-06 | mwachs5       | CONTROL: Rename control and status registers to                        |
|          |            |               | CS for consistency and to accurately reflect their                     |
|          |            |               | functionality.   |
| 45cf6c2  | 2017-03-06 | mwachs5       | Errors: fix up the bit assignments in SERSTATUS                        |
|          |            |               | with the addition of error bit.  |
| 38cb5a0  | 2017-03-06 | mwachs5       | Errors: Make errors write-1-to-clear.                                  |
| b436d77  | 2017-03-03 | mwachs5       | triggers: Clarify that matches are against virtual ad-                 |
|          |            | -             | dresses.   |
| 793bb85  | 2017-03-03 | mwachs5       | triggers: Add suggested timings for best user experi-                  |
|          |            |               | ence.  |
|          |            |               |  |

| 2669866                   | 2017-03-03     | mwachs5       | stoptime/stopcycle: Make their functionality match their name. Allow any reset value. |
|---------------------------|----------------|---------------|---|
| c85a1cf                   | 2017-03-01     | mwachs5       | config_string: Simplify the Config String Address ab-                                 |
| 202 61                    | 0017 02 00     | M . 337 1     | stract command.   |
| a303a6b                   | 2017-03-02     | Megan Wachs   | Update README.md  |
| 92a4923                   | 2017-03-01     | mwachs5       | serial: tweak addresses.  |
| b09f460                   | 2017-03-01     | mwachs5       | serial: tweak addresses.  |
| 6477837                   | 2017-03-01     | mwachs5       | chisel: tweaks to class names.  |
| be83e3e                   | 2017-02-28     | Tim Newsome   | Clarify stoptime, stopcycle.  |
| c17c17c                   | 2017-02-27     | Tim Newsome   | Abstract command that returns config string addr.                                     |
| 096 dfbc                  | 2017-02-27     | Tim Newsome   | Acknowledge Alex.   |
| c0253ab                   | 2017-02-24     | Tim Newsome   | Explain tdata1 type a bit more.   |
| e43ac2e                   | 2017 - 02 - 24 | Tim Newsome   | Clarify how to enumerate triggers again.  |
| c6e3e20                   | 2017 - 02 - 23 | Tim Newsome   | Revert previous commit.   |
| ef770bf                   | 2017-02-23     | Tim Newsome   | mcontrol and icount mask tdata2, not tdata1.  |
| 27806f2                   | 2017-02-23     | mwachs5       | rename 'type' to 'cmdtype' purely so my auto-   |
|                           |                |               | generation scripts work.  |
| e46798d                   | 2017-02-22     | mwachs5       | Add Abstract Commands to automatic chisel   |
| b3bb939                   | 2017-02-21     | mwachs5       | Generate Chisel headers as well for Debug Module.                                     |
| c9db98c                   | 2017-02-22     | Tim Newsome   | Simplify description of op statuses.  |
| bda39cc                   | 2017-02-22     | mwachs5       | Add explicit type field to Abstract Command.  |
| f83a1ca                   | 2017-02-22     | mwachs5       | Finish up replacement of ibuf-; progbuf   |
| 9666e51                   | 2017-02-22     | mwachs5       | IBUF-; PROGBUF  |
| 5308ecd                   | 2017-02-22     | mwachs5       | Remove last references to "Instruction Supply"  |
| f6ebde9                   | 2017-02-22     | Tim Newsome   | Move authentication to a serial protocol.   |
| 0 f 0 79 c 8              | 2017-02-22     | Tim Newsome   | Reserve bit for per-hart reset.   |
| f2c93ac                   | 2017-02-22     | Tim Newsome   | Clarify that dractive resets authentication.  |
| f5e7b1c                   | 2017-02-22     | Alex Bradbury | Clarify that the halt state of all harts is maintained                                |
|                           |                | J             | through reset   |
| 3dfe8fd                   | 2017-02-22     | Tim Newsome   | More Debug Mode -; Halt Mode.   |
| d29fc1f                   | 2017-02-22     | Tim Newsome   | Debug Mode -; Halt Mode   |
| 55d6030                   | 2017-02-21     | Tim Newsome   | Generate debug_defines.h as part of normal make                                       |
| b0e6a7f                   | 2017-02-21     | Tim Newsome   | Minor clarifications.   |
| 0f9885c                   | 2017-02-20     | Tim Newsome   | Various clarifications.   |
| 0802d5a                   | 2017-02-15     | mwachs5       | Use consistent 'Control and Status' naming for CS                                     |
| 0002404                   | 2011 02 10     | III W GOILEO  | registers.  |
| $5 \operatorname{accc7d}$ | 2017-02-15     | Tim Newsome   | Change all the "other" JTAG IRs to just reserved.                                     |
| bcbd7da                   | 2017-02-15     | mwachs5       | sm_diagram: Show using resumered bit to resume.                                       |
| 18f6e55                   | 2017-02-14     | Tim Newsome   | Introduce resumered command, similar to haltred.                                      |
| 4b62c40                   | 2017-02-14     | mwachs5       | SystemBus: Clean up some formatting and error   |
|                           |                |               | specification notes.  |
| bc97723                   | 2017-02-14     | mwachs5       | quick-access: Update SM Diagram for Quick Access                                      |
| d27066e                   | 2017-02-14     | Tim Newsome   | Clarify haltreq bit.  |
| 6f8ec43                   | 2017-02-14     | Tim Newsome   | Always generate long constants when required.   |
| c6ac6bc                   | 2017-02-13     | Tim Newsome   | Include field descriptions in C header file.  |
| b849213                   | 2017-02-13     | Tim Newsome   | Fix the build.  |
| 1cf8033                   | 2017-02-12     | mwachs5       | jtag: More clarifications   |
| 6203 bd6                  | 2017-02-12     | Megan Wachs   | Update requirements— W GPRs Required  |
|                           |                | <u> </u>      | - ·   |

| (O) 40 F            | 2017 02 12 | 3.6 337 1   | T) 1 11 1/1 1   |
|---------------------|------------|-------------|---|
| f2b43a7             | 2017-02-12 | Megan Wachs | Remove double 'the'   |
| 2c64ef1             | 2017-02-12 | Megan Wachs | Remove comma  |
| f84abce             | 2017-02-12 | Megan Wachs | Whitespace edits and address come comments                  |
| 23c2648             | 2017-02-11 | mwachs5     | jtag_dtm: ask for clarification on TAP sharing.             |
| 7020d23             | 2017-02-11 | mwachs5     | jtag_dtm: Clarifications, DBUS-¿DMI                         |
| 292d49c             | 2017-02-11 | Megan Wachs | fix indentation   |
| b879b86             | 2017-02-11 | Megan Wachs | Add missing period  |
| bbe0521             | 2017-02-11 | mwachs5     | Make comments on program buffer size match the address map. |
| 4ceaa37             | 2017-02-11 | mwachs5     | Flesh out and edit the introduction/background Add          |
| 4ceaa31             | 2017-02-11 | mwachso     | a description of use cases this spec has in mind, and       |
|                     |            |             | what it doesn't cover.                                      |
| cbf89d6             | 2017-02-11 | Tim Newsome | Rewrite Quick Access.                                       |
| 170bff1             | 2017-02-10 | Megan Wachs | Allow size 4 for the program buffer                         |
| c911e6e             | 2017-02-10 | Tim Newsome | Clarify use of dmactive.                                    |
| 2ca296f             | 2017-02-09 | Tim Newsome | Reserve command register space for custom use.              |
| e49666e             | 2017-02-09 | Tim Newsome | Clarify hart index change per Megan's comments.             |
| 84865e9             | 2017-02-09 | Tim Newsome | Add header prefix for abstract commands.                    |
| 2434f4f             | 2017-02-09 | Tim Newsome | Select harts by index instead of hart ID.                   |
| 7bf112a             | 2017-02-09 | Tim Newsome | Generate correct headers for ¿32-bit registers.             |
| 7f0f09a             | 2017-02-08 | Tim Newsome | Reset dbus status to "failure" to avoid confusion.          |
| 8b1c6f0             | 2017-02-08 | Megan Wachs | Fix line wrap issue   |
| 345c33f             | 2017-02-08 | Megan Wachs | Call out "arg0" specifically.                               |
| 9f080f5             | 2017-02-08 | Megan Wachs | Clarify "arguments" to commands                             |
| 259badd             | 2017-02-08 | Tim Newsome | Make haltsum/halt registers mandatory.                      |
| eb0f1d3             | 2017-02-07 | Tim Newsome | Allow for early abstract command failures.                  |
| bb49bd1             | 2017-02-07 | Tim Newsome | Clarify error handling a little.                            |
| 3 fc 0a 97          | 2017-02-07 | Tim Newsome | Explain when abstract data regs may be clobbered.           |
| c37167e             | 2017-02-07 | Tim Newsome | Fix old language in description of halt registers.          |
| 6943c96             | 2017-02-07 | Tim Newsome | Generate more useful C header files from reg defs           |
| 98639df             | 2017-02-05 | mwachs5     | Include the SM Diagram as a figure. Also some minor         |
|                     |            |             | capitalization fixes.                                       |
| a95e4c3             | 2017-02-05 | mwachs5     | Update State Machine diagram to show uncertainty            |
|                     |            |             | of halt bit during auto halt/resume.                        |
| ba76744             | 2017-02-05 | Tim Newsome | Combine loabits and hiabits.                                |
| 02b1d92             | 2017-02-05 | Tim Newsome | DMI can get away with just 6 address bits.                  |
| 35d6e33             | 2017-02-05 | mwachs5     | Update State machine diagram to show BUSY with-             |
|                     |            |             | out HALTED  |
| f511b05             | 2017-02-04 | Tim Newsome | Clarify command busy bit.                                   |
| d0f8961             | 2017-02-03 | mwachs5     | Update figures  |
| e18a68d             | 2017-02-03 | Tim Newsome | Clarify prehalt/postresume failure.                         |
| ac3e2a9             | 2017-02-02 | Tim Newsome | Clarify abstract command failure behavior.                  |
| ce4baee             | 2017-02-02 | Tim Newsome | Add Quick Access section.                                   |
| 0490377             | 2017-02-02 | Tim Newsome | Add prehalt and postresume to reg command.                  |
| $67515 \mathrm{bd}$ | 2017-02-02 | Tim Newsome | Deal with a few minor TODOs.                                |
| 96456 fc            | 2017-02-02 | Tim Newsome | Turn register names into links.                             |
| 317cd98             | 2017-02-02 | Tim Newsome | Explain what register access is required.                   |
| f3ad2f2             | 2017-02-01 | Tim Newsome | Revert Plain Exception implementation to be simple          |
|                     |            |             | =   |

| a0ad281        | 2017-02-01 | Tim Newsome | execb -;, preexec, execa -;, postexec                |
|----------------|------------|-------------|--|
| 1d4a2c3        | 2017-02-01 | Tim Newsome | Limit Program Buffer sizes to 0, 1, 8.               |
| cc40815        | 2017-02-01 | Tim Newsome | Incorporate Po-wei's feedback.                       |
| c8b45d6        | 2017-02-01 | Tim Newsome | Clarify how all autoexec bits work.                  |
| dbb1deb        | 2017-02-01 | Tim Newsome | Remove stale TODO.                                   |
| c5f8f59        | 2017-02-01 | Tim Newsome | Explain why cmderr inhibits starting new commands.   |
| 5c69194        | 2017-02-01 | Tim Newsome | Fix editing error.                                   |
| 50f7c48        | 2017-02-01 | Tim Newsome | Remove empty hart info register.                     |
| 781c68e        | 2017-02-01 | Megan Wachs | Update README.md                                     |
| f46b32e        | 2017-02-01 | mwachs5     | Add a diagram of Abstract Command flow.              |
| 633bd63        | 2017-02-01 | Tim Newsome | Move Reading Order into About This Document          |
| 51ec $4$ d $1$ | 2017-02-01 | Tim Newsome | Add reading order section.                           |
| 03d20ad        | 2017-02-01 | Tim Newsome | autoexec0 applies to data0, not inst0.               |
| c302353        | 2017-01-31 | Tim Newsome | Don't rely on hart fetching instructions once.       |
| 2558c25        | 2017-01-31 | Tim Newsome | Change how exceptions in Halt Mode are handled.      |
| a36ddce        | 2017-01-31 | Tim Newsome | Add size to abstract register command.               |
| 64 de 458      | 2017-01-31 | Tim Newsome | Detail bus master reads.                             |
| c08486f        | 2017-01-31 | Megan Wachs | reset: Add some comments (#5)                        |
| 1558049        | 2017-01-30 | Tim Newsome | Automate Change Log.                                 |
| 51525a4        | 2017-01-29 | Tim Newsome | Update System Overview                               |
| 7d39ac0        | 2017-01-29 | Tim Newsome | Update Supported Features.                           |
| 9e7cbea        | 2017-01-29 | Tim Newsome | Update RISC-V Core section.                          |
| 515188d        | 2017-01-29 | Tim Newsome | Update Hardware Implementations section.             |
| 4b19ed8        | 2017-01-29 | mwachs5     | system_bus: be consistent and always call it 'System |
|                |            |             | Bus'. Even if some dislike the name, we should be    |
|                |            |             | consistent and clear in the spec.                    |
| 9ccef3d        | 2017-01-29 | Tim Newsome | Fleshed out some debugger implementation.            |
| 04b9176        | 2017-01-28 | Tim Newsome | Rename debug exception to breakpoint exception.      |
| 5ac4ea1        | 2017-01-27 | Tim Newsome | WIP on big update on instruction supply.             |
| 2d9c3e2        | 2017-01-27 | Tim Newsome | Reorganize dm registers.                             |
| de50ba8        | 2017-01-27 | Tim Newsome | Abstract command support is already addressed.       |
| 5085046        | 2017-01-26 | mwachs5     | Rename registers and fields like 'access' that were  |
|                |            |             | confusingly the same name.                           |
| 10bbf6f        | 2017-01-26 | Tim Newsome | Fix #2: DM address space table                       |
| a05c582        | 2017-01-26 | Tim Newsome | Add debugger inspection as a feature.                |
| 4062681        | 2017-01-24 | Tim Newsome | Add publish target.                                  |
| 5c8bb83        | 2017-01-24 | Tim Newsome | Clarify use of data registers.                       |
| 1504 da6       | 2017-01-24 | Tim Newsome | Replace manual date with automatic git hash/date.    |
| 997f2a0        | 2017-01-23 | Tim Newsome | Deal with unsupported abstract commands.             |
| cb6f2b8        | 2017-01-23 | Tim Newsome | Renumber registers to prevent duplicates.            |
| 8b4db96        | 2017-01-23 | Tim Newsome | Don't print out addresses if they're not provided.   |
| b00cd21        | 2017-01-23 | Tim Newsome | Add an abstract command.                             |
| 675b556        | 2017-01-23 | Tim Newsome | Reorganize DM bits into functional group regs.       |
| 5 fc 7512      | 2017-01-23 | Tim Newsome | Remove bits 33:32 from sbdata[23].                   |
| ceb5d66        | 2017-01-20 | Tim Newsome | Starting point for a comprehensive spec              |
|                |            |             |  |